

Қазақстан Республикасының Білім және ғылым министрлігі
М.Өтемісов атындағы Батыс Қазақстан мемлекеттік университеті

Тілдерді оқыту практикалық курсы кафедрасы

Г.А.Төрежанова

АҒЫЛШЫН ТІЛІ ГРАММАТИКАСЫ

оқу-әдістемелік құрал

Орал, 2013

УДК: 811. 111'36 (07)

ББК 81.2Ағл.я7

Пікір берушілер: Хайыров А.Б. – ф.ғ.к., доцент
Ажғалиев М.А. – ф.ғ.к

Автор: Төрежанова Г.А. – М. Өтемісов атындағы
Батыс Қазақстан мемлекеттік университе-
тінің оқытушысы, шет тілі: екі шет тілі
магистрі

Төрежанова Г. А.

Ағылшын тілі грамматикасы: оқу-әдістемелік құрал. – Орал:
М.Өтемісов атындағы БҚМУ редакциялық баспа орталығы, 2013. –
254 б.

ISBN 978-601-266-136-1

«Ағылшын тілі грамматикасы» оқу-әдістемелік оқу құралында ағылшын тілінің грамматикасы жан-жақты талданып, анықтамалар берілген. Аталмыш оқу-құралда ағылшын тілінің грамматикасының кейбір бөлімдері кесте арқылы түсіндіріліп, мысалдардың қазақша аудармалары көрсетілген, сонымен қатар бұл оқу-әдістемелік құралда ағылшын тілінің грамматикасы қазақ тілі грамматикасымен салыстырмалы түрде оқытылады.

Бұл әдістемелік құрал 19 бөлімнен тұрады: алдымен ағылшын тілінің грамматикасы түсіндіріледі, кейін жаттығулар жиынтығы, соңында өткен грамматикалық тақырыпты пысықтауға тест тапсырмалары берілген.

Бұл оқу-әдістемелік құралы оқытушылар мен студенттерге, сонымен қатар ағылшын тілін оқып-үйренушілерге, жалпы көпшілікке арналған.

УДК: 811. 111'36 (07)

ББК 81.2Ағл.я7

ISBN 978-601-266-136-1

© Төрежанова Г.А., 2013.

© М.Өтемісов атындағы БҚМУ РБО, 2013.

UNIT I

THE NOUN – ЗАТ ЕСІМ

Зат есім түрлері

Зат есім – заттардың, нәрселердің атын, табиғаттағы және қоғамдағы құбылыстарды, уақиғаларды, ұғымдар мен түсініктерді білдіретін сөз табы. Зат есімдер жалқы және жалпы болып екіге бөлінеді.

► **Proper Nouns (Жалқы есімдер)** белгілі бір затты, нәрсені арнайы, даралай айтады.

Кісі аттары:

Augerim, Amanat, Almas.

Географиялық атаулар: қала, өзен, көл, тау аттары

Алматы - Almaty

Астана - Astana

► **Common Nouns (Жалпы есімдер)** әр алуан деректі және дерексіз заттар мен ұғымдарды білдіретін зат есімдер.

Жалпы есімдер санауға санауға келетін (countable) және санауға келмейтін (uncountable) болып екіге бөлінеді.

Countable (санауға келетін) яғни заттарды санауға болатын зат есімдер:

I have bought a book. I have bought two books.

There are many libraries in Astana.

Uncountable (санауға келмейтін) зат есімдер тобы:

Food: rice, sugar, fruit, milk, bread, butter, cheese

Fluids: blood, water, oil, coffee, tea, gasoline

Raw materials: wood, paper, glass, iron, silver, wool

Gases: oxygen, nitrogen, air, pollution, steam

General: furniture, mail, money, traffic, equipment

Groups: jewelry, machinery, luggage, clothing, cash

Languages: English, Chinese, Japanese, Spanish

Academic subjects: chemistry, mathematics, psychology

Abstract things: education, health, intelligence, beauty, knowledge, sleep, hope, music, time

Зат есімнің классификациясы

Негізгі зат есім (Simple Nouns). Негізгі зат есімге ешқандай жұрнақ жалғанбайды.

Мысалы: *a table, a room, a girl, a ship.*

Туынды зат есім (Derivate Nouns)

Зат есімге жұрнақ жалғану арқылы жасалған зат есім.

Туынды зат есім жасайтын жұрнақтар:

- **er**: *teacher, writer*
- **ment**: *development, government*
- **ness**: *sadness, kindness*
- **ion**: *restriction, connection*
- **dom**: *freedom, wisdom*
- **hood**: *childhood, neighbourhood*
- **ship**: *leadership, friendship*

Күрделі зат есім (Compound nouns)

Екі немесе бірнеше зат есімнен құралған зат есім.

A class, a postman, an airport

Зат есімдердің көпше түрінің жасалуы

Ереже Rules	Жекеше түрі Singular	Көпше түрі Plural	Есте сақтаңыз Remember
Зат есімнің түрін жасау үшін түбірге -s жалғауы жалғанады.	<i>a table a dog a cat</i>	<i>two tabs two dogs two cats</i>	
Зат есімдер -ch, -s, -ss, sh, tch, -x әріптеріне аяқталса, -es жалғауы жалғанады.	<i>a dish a match a class a box</i>	<i>two dishes two matches two classes two boxes</i>	
Зат есім -y әрпіне аяқталып, оның алдында дауыссыз тұрса -es жалғауы жалғанады да, -y әрпі -i әрпіне айналады.	<i>a story a city</i>	<i>two stories two cities</i>	

<p>Егер зат есім жекеше түрде –у әрпіне аяқталып, оның алдында дауысты әріп тұрса, онда –у әрпі өзгермейді, көпше түрде тек –s жалғауы жалғанады.</p>	<p><i>a key</i> <i>a day</i></p>	<p><i>two keys</i> <i>two days</i></p>	
<p>Зат есім жекеше түрде -f немесе -fe әріптеріне аяқталса әрпі v әрпіне өзгереді де, -es жалғауы жалғанады.</p>	<p><i>a knife</i> <i>a shelf</i></p>	<p><i>two knives</i> <i>two shelves</i></p>	<p>Ереже бағынбайтын кейбір зат есімдер:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>a cuff-cuffs</i> ▪ <i>a handkerchief-handkerchiefs</i> ▪ <i>a roof - roofs</i> ▪ <i>a safe- safes</i> ▪ <i>a belief – beliefs</i> ▪ <i>a chief - chiefs</i> ▪ <i>a cliff – cliffs</i>
<p>Жекеше түрде зат есім –o әрпіне аяқталса және –o әрпінің алдында дауыссыз әріп тұрса, онда зат есімге –es жалғауы жалғанады.</p>	<p><i>a tomato</i> <i>a hero</i> <i>zero</i> <i>volcano</i> <i>tornado</i> <i>mosquito</i></p>	<p><i>two tomatoes</i> <i>two heroes</i> <i>zeroes / zeros</i> <i>volcanoes / volcanos</i> <i>tornadoes / tornados</i> <i>mosquitoes / mosquitos</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>a kilo – kilos</i> ▪ <i>a photo - photos</i> ▪ <i>a piano – pianos</i> ▪ <i>radio - radios</i> ▪ <i>a video - videos</i> ▪ <i>a zoo - zoos</i> ▪ <i>a hippo - hippos</i> ▪ <i>tattoo – tattoos</i> ▪ <i>a rhino – rhinos</i>
<p>Күрделі зат есімдерге көптік жалғау басты мағыналы сөзге жалғанады.</p>	<p><i>custom-house</i> <i>hotel – keeper</i> <i>mother-in-law man-servant</i></p>	<p><i>custom-houses</i> <i>hotel – keepers</i> <i>mother-in-laws</i> <i>man-servants</i></p>	

<p>Кейбір зат есімдердің көпше түрі ешқандай ережеге бағынбай, сөздегі дауыстыны өзгерту арқылы жасалады.</p>	<p><i>a man</i> <i>a woman</i> <i>a foot</i> <i>a mouse</i> <i>a tooth</i> <i>a goose</i></p>	<p><i>men</i> <i>women</i> <i>feet</i> <i>mice</i> <i>teeth</i> <i>geese</i></p>	
<p>Кейбір зат есімдердің жекеше түрі мен көпше түрі бірдей.</p>	<p><i>a deer</i> <i>a species</i> <i>a sheep</i> <i>a fish</i></p>	<p><i>deer</i> <i>species</i> <i>sheep</i> <i>fish</i></p>	
<p>Латын, грек және француз тілінен енген зат есімдер сол тілдердегі көпше түрінің формасын сақтайды.</p>	<p><i>a formula</i> <i>a datum</i> <i>a bureau</i> <i>an index</i> <i>hypothesis</i> <i>thesis</i> <i>bacterium</i> <i>cactus</i></p>	<p><i>formulae</i> <i>data</i> <i>bureaux</i> <i>indices</i> <i>hypotheses</i> <i>theses</i> <i>bacteria</i> <i>cacti</i></p>	

THE CASE

Зат есімнің тәуелдік жалғаулары

Ағылшын тілінде екі септеу бар: жалпы септеу (*The Common Case*) және тәуелдік септеу (*The Possessive Case*)

The Common Case (Жалпы септеу)

Жалпы септеудегі зат есімдер орнына қарай әртүрлі функцияны атқарады. Егер зат есімдер, сөйлемде баяндауыштың алдында тұрса, ол бастауыш болады. Егер зат есімдер сөйлемде баяндауыштан кейін тұрса, ол тура толықтауыш болады.

Мысалы: The student recognized the teacher. Студент оқытушыны таныды.

The teacher recognized the student. Оқытушы студентті таныды.

Баяндауыш пен тура толықтауышты білдіретін зат есімдер арасында жалпы септеудегі басқа адамды білдіретін зат есім тұруы мүмкін. Ондай зат есім жанама толықтауыш болады.

Мысалы: The teacher showed the students a diagram. Оқытушы диаграмманы студенттерге көрсетті.

Зат есімдер жалпы септеуде әртүрлі демеуліктермен қолданылады.

Мысалы: I have received a letter from my sister. Мен апамнан хат алдым.

He bought a toy for his son. Ол баласына ойыншық сатып алды.

► Тәуелдік септіктегі зат есімдер жекеше түрде -'s жалғауы арқылы жасалады.

▪ *My friend's house* - *Менің досымның үйі*

▪ *Nurgul's brother* - *Нұргүлдің ағасы*

► Зат есім көпше түрде болса, онда s жалғауы және апостраф қойылады.

▪ *My friend's letters* - *Менің достарымның хаттары*

▪ *The women's dresses* - *әйелдердің көйлегі*

► Күрделі зат есімдерге s жалғауы соңғы сөзге жалғанады.

▪ *The commander-in-chief's order.*

▪ *My brother-in-law's library*

► Заттарға 'of' демеулігі қолданылады

▪ *The door of the garage (not the garage's door)* - *гараждың есегі*

▪ *The name of the book* - *кітаптың аты*

▪ *The owner of the restaurant* - *мейрамхананың иесі*

► Мезгіл үстеулерінің (today's, tomorrow's, this evening's, Monday's) тәуелденуі жалғауы жалғану арқылы жасалады.

- *Next week's exam has been cancelled.*
- *Have you got yesterday's newspapers?*
- *Alihan has got two weeks holiday.*

▼ **Есте сақтаңыз**

It was a three-hour journey.

- *a three hour-journey (not a three-hours journey)*
- *a six-week French course (not weeks)*
- *two 14-year-old boys (not years)*
- *a three-page letter (pages)*

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Write the plural of the following nouns:

Piano, shelf, army, potato, safe, wolf, cliff, wife, schoolboy, schoolchild, leaf, life, factory, knife, man, roof, photo, toy, tomato, class, room, copy, book, note, house, wife, news, paper, home, land, mother, country, student, typist, writer, pilot, doctor, officer, architect, actor, actress, painter, sailor, dentist, teacher, mechanic, locksmith, driver, composer, shop-assistant.

✎ 2. Rewrite in the plural:

1. This is a desk. 2. That's a clock. 3. This is a lamp. 4. Where is the picture? 5. The picture is in the book. 6. The chair is in the room. 7. The map is on the table. 8. This is a pen. 9. That is a window. 10. The book is on the table. 11. The map is on the wall. 12. The blackboard is on the floor. 13. I have a picture on the wall. 14. My picture is not in the bag. 15. She has a pen and a pencil in the bag.

✎ 3. Put the following nouns in the plural form:

1. What is that child's name? 2. The cat has caught a mouse. 3. There was a lady, a gentleman, a boy and a girl in the room. 4. In the farm-yard we could see an ox, a sheep, a cow and a goose. 5. Is this worker an Englishman or a German? – He is a Frenchman. 6. Why don't you eat this potato? 7. This strawberry is still green. 8. The withered leaf has fallen to the ground. 9. Can you see a bird in that tree? 10. Does your tooth still ache? 11. I held up my foot to the fire to warm it. 12. His child studies very well. 13. This man works at our office. 14. There is a new house in our street. 15. This story is very interesting. 16. I have hurt my foot. 17. The wolf has been shot. 18. He keeps his toy in a box. 19. Put this knife on that table.

✎ 5. Put the following nouns in the plural form:

1. This is a bird. 2. Is that also a bird? – No, it isn't. That is a cat. 3. Is that a good horse? – Yes, it is. 4. Is that a cow big or small? – It is big. 5. This is an apple and that is a flower. 6. Where is the coin? – It is in the box. 7. What colour is the box? – It is green. . 8. What is it made of? – It is made of wood. 9. What is that man? – He is a clerk. 10. Is he in the office? – Yes, he is. 11. Is that woman a typist? – No, she isn't. – What is she? – She is a doctor. 12. Is his brother at home? –

Yes, he is. 13. This house has a balcony looking out on the street. 14. The architecture of this building is quite modern. 15. This is a new district of St. Petersburg. 16. There is a shop, a cinema and a theatre in the new district. 17. He is a retired worker. 18. I am a doctor. 19. We hear the sounds of a child's voice. 20. She is a nice girl.

6. Open the brackets put the nouns in the plural or in the singular forms:

1. I met some interesting _____ at the meeting. (man)
2. I need some _____ to light the fire. (match)
3. The baby got two new _____. (tooth)
4. The farmer loaded his cart with _____ (box) of fresh vegetables to take to market. His cart was pulled by two _____ (ox)
5. Alex saw some _____ running across the floor. (mouse)
6. The north side of the island has no _____. There are only _____ steep. No one can climb these steep walls of rock. (beach, cliff).
7. If a houseplant is given too much water, its lower _____ turn yellow. (leaf)
8. Before Marie signed the contract, she talked to two _____ (attorney)
9. New scientific _____ are made every day in _____ throughout the world, (discovery, laboratory)
10. I caught several _____ in the lake (fish)
11. On our trip in the mountainous countryside, we saw some _____, _____, and wild _____ (wolf, fox, deer, sheep)
12. When we spoke in the cave, we could hear _____ of our voices. (echo)
13. The music building at the university has 27 _____. Students need to sign up for practice times. (piano)
14. Thunder and lightning are _____ of nature. (phenomenon)
15. People get most of their news about the world through the mass _____, that is, through radio, television, the Internet, newspapers, and magazines. (medium)

THE ARTICLE – АРТИКЛЬ

Ағылшын тілінде артикльдердің екі түрі бар: белгісіздік “**a/an**” (Indefinite Article), және белгілілік “**the**” (Definite Article)

▶ Белгісіздік артиклі: **A/AN**:

A + дауыссыз дыбыс (consonant)

▶ Егер сөз дауыссыз дыбыстан басталса, зат есімнің алдына ‘**a**’ белгісіздік артиклі қолданылады.

▪ *A child, a doctor, etc.*

▶ **AN + дауысты дыбыс (vowel)**

▪ **An** apple, **an** umbrella, **an** hour

“A(AN)” белгісіздік артиклінің қолданылуы	Белгілілік “THE” артиклінің қолданылуы
<p>Санауға келетін зат есімдердің тек жекеше түрінде</p> <p>a) <i>Do you need an umbrella?</i></p> <p>b) <i>I never wear a hat.</i></p>	<p>Контексте немесе бір ситуацияда не туралы айтып жатқандығы нақты белгілі болса</p> <p>a) <i>Can you turn off the light?</i></p> <p>b) <i>I’d like to speak to the manager, please.</i></p>
<p>Сөйлеуші заттар мен нәрселер туралы алғаш рет сөз қозғап тұрса</p> <p>a) <i>I had a sandwich and an apple for lunch.</i></p> <p>b) <i>A man and a woman are sitting opposite me.</i></p>	<p>Егерде зат есім екінші сөйлемде қайталанса</p> <p>a) <i>Last year I bought a car. The car was very expensive.</i></p> <p>b) <i>When I entered the room, I saw a man. The man was very old.</i></p>
<p>Заттың кім, не екендігі жайлы анықтама бергенде</p> <p>a) <i>Omar’s father is a lawyer.</i></p> <p>b) <i>Would you like to be an English teacher?</i></p>	<p>Дүниеде бір-ақ түрі кездесетін ғаламшар атаулары</p> <p>a) <i>The earth is millions of kilometers from the sun.</i></p> <p>b) <i>The sun was going down.</i></p>
<p>Санауға келетін зат есімдердің жекеше түрінің алдында сын есім келсе</p> <p>a) <i>My brother is a good driver.</i></p> <p>b) <i>Dastan has bought an expensive car.</i></p>	<p>Мұхит: <i>the Atlantic Ocean, the Indian Ocean, the Pacific Ocean.</i></p> <p>Теңіз: <i>the Mediterranean Sea</i></p> <p>Өзен: <i>the Thames, the Amazon, the Nile</i></p> <p>Канал: <i>the Suez Canal, the Panama Canal</i></p> <p>Тау тізбектері: <i>the Alps, the</i></p>

	<p><i>Rockies</i> Шөл далалар: <i>the Gobi, the Sahara Desert</i></p>
<p>Лепті сөйлемде санауға келетін зат есімдердің жекеше түрі болса <i>a) What a beautiful garden!</i> <i>b) What a lovely dress!</i> Санауға келетін зат есімдердің көпше түрі және санауға келмейтін зат есімнің алдында артикль қойылмайды.</p>	<p>Мұражайлар: <i>the British Museum, the Tate Gallery, the Louvre</i> Қонақ үйлер: <i>the Station Hotel, the Hilton Hotel</i> Театрлар/кинотеатрлар/клубтар: <i>the palace Theatre, the Odeon Cinema</i> Газеттер мен кейбір журнал аттары: <i>Washington Post, the Financial Times, the Times</i></p>
<p>Тұрақты тіркестерде <i>A lot of, a great deal of, a few, a little, for a short (long) time, in a loud voice, to be in a hurry, to be in a position to be at a loss, It is a pity; as a result of; as a matter of fact</i> <i>To have a good time</i> <i>To have a look</i> <i>To have a seat</i> <i>To go for a walk</i></p>	<p>Ұлт атауларының алдында <i>a) The Japanese are very industrial people.</i> <i>b) The French are considered to be conservative people.</i></p>
<p>Such, quite, rather сөздерінен кейін жекеше түрдегі саналатын зат есім келсе <i>a) It was such an easy test.</i> <i>b) It is rather an old house.</i> <i>c) He is quite an old man.</i></p>	<p>Сын есімнің күшейтпелі шырайының алдында <i>a) He is the tallest boy in our class.</i> <i>b) She is the most intelligent woman I've ever met.</i></p>
<p>Hundred, thousand, million, dozen сан есімдерінің алдында «one» сан есімі келетін болса <i>a) His case weights a (one) hundred pounds</i> <i>b) Azat has won a (one) thousand dollars.</i></p>	<p>Зат есімдердің алдында реттік сан есім келсе <i>a) Your second composition is better than the first.</i> <i>b) February is the second month of the year.</i></p>
	<p>Отбасын түгелдей әңгімелейтін болсақ <i>a) The Zhandosovs arrived from Astana</i></p>

	<p>Кейбір мемлекеттер мен штаттардың аттарының алдында, егер олар republic, union, state сөздерімен тіркесіп келсе</p> <p><i>The United Kingdom, the United States</i></p> <p><i>the Netherlands</i></p>
	<p>Музыкалық аспаптардың атауларының алдында</p> <p><i>the piano, the saxophone</i></p>
	<p>Тұрақты тіркестерде</p> <p><i>in the morning, in the evening, in the afternoon, the day after tomorrow, on the right (left), on the whole</i></p>

THE ZERO ARTICLE

Артикльдердің қолданылмайтын кездері

▶ Жалқы есімдердің алдында: кісі аттары: *Mansur, Sholpan, Aizhan, Talgat.*

▶ Құрлықтар мен кейбір елдердің аттарының алдында *Europe, Spain, Asia, Japan.*

▶ Қала аттары: *Almaty, Astana, New-York*

▶ Дәреже, лауазым, атақты білдіретін зат есімдерінің алдында

Doctor Watson, Lord Byron, Admiral Nelson, Professor Azimov, Mr. White, Comrade Ivanov

▶ Ғылым салаларының аттарында *I like mathematics and chemistry*

▶ Тұрақты тіркестерде

at night, at home, at work, at first sight, at sunset, by train (bus, boat, tram), in conclusion, by air (water, sea, land), by heart day and night, by chance from morning to (till) night, by mistake

▶ Breakfast, lunch, dinner сөздерінің алдында

What time is dinner? We had lunch in a very nice restaurant.

▶ Егер зат есім сан есіммен тіркесіп келсе (*Noun + number*)

Have you got these shoes in size 38?

I couldn't answer question 8.

Page 17, Room 127 etc.

▶ Мейрам, фестиваль, апта, ай аттарының алдында

Nauryz, Easter, Christmas, Wednesday

▶ Егер зат есімдер жалпы (жинақтау) мағынасында келсе:

Dogs are domestic animals.

▶ Көше аттары, саябақ және алаң аттарының алдында

Fifth Avenue, Hyde Park, Times Square, Broadway

▶ Танымал жер аттары

Егер бұл зат есімнің бірінші сөзі кісі аты болса, артикльсіз қолданылады:

Victoria Station, Westminster Abbey, Edinburgh Castle, Buckingham Palace, Cambridge University, Kennedy Airport

**School, college, university, work, bed, town, hospital,
prison, jail**

зат есімдерімен артикльдің қолданылуы

Артикль қолданылмайтын жағдайлар	A / the артикльмен қолданысы
<p>Егер бұл сөздер жалпы мағынада қолданылса</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ <i>Her brother is in prison for robbery.</i>▪ <i>Omar had an accident last week. He was taken to hospital. He is still in hospital now.</i>	<p>Егер белгілі бір мақсатпен барылатын болса</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ <i>She went to the prison to visit his brother</i>▪ <i>Azat has gone to the hospital to visit Omar. He is at the hospital now.</i>

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Fill in the definite or indefinite article if necessary:

1. a. This house is very nice. Has it got _____ garden?
b. It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in _____ garden.
c. I like living in this house but it's a pity that _____ garden is so small.
2. a. Can you recommend _____ good restaurant?
b. We had dinner in _____ very nice restaurant.
c. We had dinner in _____ most expensive restaurant in town.
3. a. She has _____ French name but in fact she's English, not French.
b. What's _____ name of that man we met yesterday?
c. We stayed at a very nice hotel – I can't remember _____ name now.
4. a. There isn't _____ airport near where I live _____ nearest airport is 70 miles away.
b. Our plane was delayed. We had to wait _____ airport for three hours.
c. Excuse me, please. Can you tell me how to get to _____ airport?
5. a. 'Are you going away next week?'
'No, _____ week after next.'
b. I'm going away for _____ week in September.
c. George has a part-time job. He works three mornings _____ week.

✎ 2. Use the proper article:

1. Come to ... blackboard and write ... Exercise 12.
2. You have ... spelling mistake in ... word "nursery".
3. He is ... old friend of mine.
4. There came ... tap at ... door and in another moment we saw ... small girl enter ... room.
5. He is young artist and, I should say, rather talented.
6. He gave her ... cigarette and lighted it.
7. I don't feel ... sympathy towards this man.
8. They are going to build ... new house.
9. Are ... rooms in your flat large or small?

10. ... hour is a long time. In ... hour you can read ... newspaper, or write ... letter.

11. What ... beautiful music he is playing!

12. In every remark he found ... meaning but not always the true meaning.

13. There is ... curiosity in her look.

14. ... Sand fords have ... nice house ... house isn't large but comfortable.

✎ 3. Find the right answer.

For example: Sue was very helpful. She gave me some good **advice / advices** ('advice' is right)

1. Margaret has very long black **hair/hairs**.

2. We had **a very good weather / very good weather** when we were on vacation.

3. Can I help you with your **luggage / luggages**?

4. I want to write some letters. I need **a / some** newspaper.

5. I want to write some letters. I need **a / some** writing paper.

6. It's very difficult to find **a work / job** at the moment.

7. Bad news **don't / doesn't** make people happy.

8. Our **travel / trip** from Paris to Frankfurt by train was very interesting.

9. The apartment is empty. We don't have any **furnitures / furniture** yet.

10. When the fire alarm rang, there was **a complete chaos / complete chaos**.

11. Can I talk to you? I need **an / some** advice.

12. Do you have any **experience / experiences**?

✎ 4. Fill in the definite or indefinite article if necessary:

1. There are three rooms and ... kitchen in her new flat.

2. My new dress is made of ... silk.

3. If you want to write something on ... blackboard, you must have ... piece of ... chalk.

4. Are there any students in ... Room No. 12?

5. I have ... new English book ... book is very interesting.

6. There is ... garden and ... lawn in front of her Institute. ... garden is not large, but it is very beautiful.

7. The students of your group must be in ... Room №30.
8. Open ... book at page 29 and start reading.
9. May is ... fifth month of the year.
10. Saturday is ... day off.

✎ 5. Fill the sentences with under words. Put the article 'the' is necessary.

(school, university, hospital)

1. Why aren't your children at school today? Are they ill?
2. When he was younger, Ted hated
3. What time does ... start in the mornings in your country?
4. A: How do your children get home from ...? By bus?
B: No, they walk ... isn't very far.
5. What sort of job does Jenny want to do when she leaves ... ?
6. There were some people waiting outside ... to meet their children.
7. In your country, do many people go to ...?
8. If you want to get a degree, you normally have to study at
9. This is only a small town but ... is the biggest in the country.
10. Nora works as a cleaner at
11. When Ann was ill, we all went to ... to visit her.
12. My brother has always been very healthy. He's never been in
13. Peter was injured in an accident and was kept in ... for a few days.

✎ 6. Circle a or an in the following sentences. Write "C" on the left if the sentences is correct. Write "NC" if the sentences is not correct. Correct the error.

- _____ 1. Indonesia is a country made up of thousand of islands.
- _____ 2. Greenland is an big island with a permanent ice cap covering it.
- _____ 3. The Bahamas, which consist of 700 islands, have a superb climate.
- _____ 4. Robinson Crusoe is a character in a book by Daniel Defoe.
- _____ 5. Robinson Crusoe spent twenty years with his friend Man Friday on a uninhabited island.

_____6. New Guinea is a country where there are a 700 languages.

_____7. Etna is an active volcano on the island of Sicily.

_____8. On the island of Borneo, there is a snake that can fly or leap up to 20 meters.

_____9. The plants and an animals that live on an island may develop to be quite different.

✎ 7. Fill in the blanks with the correct article a, an, the or Ø and translate them.

1. Island make up ___ entire land area of some countries, including ___ Japan and ___ Philippines.

2. ___ Florida Keys are coastal islands built on coral reefs.

3. ___ Mackinac Island in ___ Lake Michigan is ___ lake island.

4. ___ city of Montreal, in ___ Canada, is built on ___ large river island.

5. ___ Aleutain Islands, part of ___ Alaska, are ___ string of coastal islands that were built by ___ volcanoes.

6. On ___ big island of Hawaii is one of ___ world's greatest volcanoes, ___ Mauna Loa.

7. Kilauea is ___ most active volcano in ___ state of ___ Hawaii.

8. The early settlers of ___ Pacific Islands, ___ Polynesians, always carried ___ coconuts with them in their canoes.

9. In ___ Indonesia is ___ huge lizard, ___ Komodo Dragon, that eats deer and attacks people.

10. ___ dodo, a giant bird now extinct, lived on ___ island of Mauritius, in ___ Indian Ocean.

TEST YOURSELF

1. Choose the right answer.

To climb ___ tree is not to climb _____ mountain.

- a) a/a
- b) a/the
- c) the/the
- d) - / -
- e) the / - .

2. Choose the right answer.

_____ weather was rainy and we made ___ bet whether you would come.

- a) the /a.
- b) - / the
- c) a / a
- d) - / a
- e) an / a

3. Choose the right answer.

___ man always went to ___ same bar at ___ same time every day and asked for two glasses of ___ soda.

- a) a / the / the / -
- b) a / the / the / a
- c) a /the / - / -
- d) - / the / the / -
- e) a / - / the / a

4. Choose the right answer.

Where there's _____ will, there's _____ way.

- a) a /a
- b) - / -
- c) the / the
- d) a / the
- e) the / a

5. Choose the right answer.

If ___ guest has to leave ___ table during ___ meal he always asks his hostess, "Will you please excuse me for ___ minute".

- a) a / the / a / a
- b) - / the / a / -
- c) the / the / - / the
- d) an / the / a / a
- e) - / - / - / a

6. Choose the right answer.

___ most favorite game is cricket, which is called by ___ English "___ greatest game in ___ world".

- a) the / the / the / the
- b) the / a / the / the
- c) - / the / - / the
- d) a / the / - the
- e) the / an / - / the

7. Choose the right answer.

In his childhood he lived with ___ grandfather, ___ poor tailor.

- a) a / the
- b) - / the
- c) the / a
- d) a / a
- e) the / the

8. Choose the right variant:

Rita plays _____ violin and her sister plays _____ guitar.

- a) a / the
- b) the / an
- c) the / the
- d) - / -
- e) a / a

9. Choose the right variant:

___ night being sharp and frosty, we trembled from ___ foot to ___ head.

- a) the / the / the
- b) the / - / -
- c) a / - / -
- d) - / a / a
- e) - / - / -

10. Choose the right answer.

___ idea of helping ___ man was unpleasant in itself.

- a) - / the
- b) the / the
- c) the / a
- d) - / -
- e) a / a

11. Choose the right answer.

What are ... colours of ... British national flag and what ... flavour is its emblem?

- a) a / the / the
- b) the / a / a
- c) - / the / the
- d) - / a / a
- e) the / the / -

12. Choose the right answer.

... coldest weather in this part of ... country is in February.

- a) a /
- b) a / the
- c) the / -
- d) the / a
- e) the / the

13. Choose the right answer.

Bring ... salt from ... kitchen.

- a) a / the
- b) a / a
- c) - / -
- d) the / the
- e) the / a

14. Choose the right answer.
... Great Patriotic war ended in ... 1945.
- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| a) the / the | d) a / the |
| b) the / - | e) - / - |
| c) - / the | |
15. ... ball, ... sugar ..., basket..., lemon.
- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| a) an a, - the. | d) an, - , a, the. |
| b) the, a, an, - . | e) - , the, a, an. |
| c) a, - , a, a. | |
16. Choose the right answer.
His _____ was the smallest among the _____
- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| a) mice, mice | d) mouses, mouses |
| b) mouse, mousse | e) mice, mouse |
| c) mouse, mice | |
17. Find the plural form of "Fish"
- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| a) Fish | d) Fishes |
| b) Fishs | e) Fishies |
| c) Fishis | |
18. Find the plural form of "Mouse"
- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| a) mousies | c) mice |
| b) mousis | d) mise |
| | e) mousse |
19. Find the correct plural form.
- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| My friend has three _____ | c) child |
| a) childs | d) a child |
| b) children | e) a children |
20. Choose the right variant.
My parents' parents are my _____
- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| a) grandmothers | d) grandchildren |
| b) grandfathers | e) great-grandparents |
| c) grandparents | |
21. Choose the right variant:
"A woman"
- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| a) woman | d) womanes |
| b) womens | e) womans |
| c) women | |

22. Choose the right variant.

Nick wants the money. Please give _____ to him.

- a) them
- b) those
- c) they
- d) these
- e) it

23. Find the uncountable noun:

- a) Meat.
- b) Goose.
- c) Table.
- d) Address.
- e) Cap.

24. Find the uncountable noun:

- a) apple
- b) glass
- c) air
- d) dollar
- e) toy

25. Find the noun using only in single form:

- a) knowledge.
- b) photo.
- c) picture.
- d) cat.
- e) pencil.

UNIT II

THE PRONOUN – ЕСІМДІК

Есімдіктер есім сөздердің атын да, белгісін де, санын да атамай тек нұсқап меңзеп көрсетеді де, солардың орнына қолданылады. Олар мағынасына және атқаратын қызметіне қарай бірнеше топқа бөлінеді.

Есімдік түрлері

Personal pronouns Жіктеу есімдіктері	I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they
Possessive pronouns Тәуелдік есімдіктері	my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their, mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs
Demonstrative pronouns Сілтеу есімдіктері	it, this/these, that/those, same, such
Interrogative pronouns Сұрау есімдіктері	who (whom), whose, which, what (сұраулы сөйлемдерде)
Self-pronouns (Reflexive pronouns) Өздік есімдіктері	myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves
Reciprocal pronouns Ортақ есімдіктер	each, other, one another
Negative pronouns Болымсыз есімдіктері	no, nobody, (no one), none, nothing (болымсыз сөйлемдерде)
Indefinite pronouns Белгісіздік есімдіктері	some, any, no, all, both, each, every, other, another, one, much, many, (a) little, (a) few, either, neither

Personal pronouns

Number	Person	The Nominative case	The objective case
Single	I	I	Me
	II	You	You
	III	He	Him
	III	She	Her
	III	It	It

Plural	I	We	Us
	II	You	You
	III	They	Them

Possessive pronouns

Тәуелдік есімдіктері кімнің? ненің? деген сұрақтарға жауап береді.

Possessive Adjectives		Possessive Pronouns	
My	our	Mine	ours
Your	your	Your	yours
His	their	His	theirs
Her		Hers	
Its			

For example:

- *Whose bag is this? (Бұл кімнің сөмкесі)?*
- *It's my bag (Бұл – менің сөмкем) / It's mine (Бұл менікі)*
- *This is not my pencil, mine is blue – Бұл менің қарындашым емес, менікі – көк.*

Demonstrative pronouns

Сілтеу есімдіктері нұсқау және көрсету мағыналарын білдіретін есімдіктің түрі.

Single form	Plural form
<p>This (мынау, бұл, осы) this week, this year</p> <p><i>My brother will go to Turkey this summer.</i></p> <p><i>I am busy at this moment.</i></p>	<p>That (анау, сонау, сол) that week, that year</p> <p><i>Asel lives in that house.</i></p> <p><i>At that moment the door opened and a man entered the room.</i></p>
<p>These (мыналар, осылар) these weeks, these years</p> <p><i>These are my books.</i></p>	<p>Those (аналар) those weeks, those years</p> <p><i>I like those dresses.</i></p>
Егер заттар сөйлеушіге жақын орналасқан болса, онда this ,	Егер заттар сөйлеушіден біршама қашықтықта орналасқан

these сілтеу есімдіктері қолданылады.

болса, онда **that, those** сілтеу есімдіктері қолданылады.

Interrogative pronouns

Сұрау есімдіктері жауап алу мақсаты мен сұрау мағынасында қойылатын сұрақтар, сөйлемдерде олар заттың саны, белгілері, сапасы орналасқан орны туралы сұрайды.

Who? (кім?), **what?** (не? қандай?), **which?** (қайсысы? қай?), **whose?** (кімдікі?), **whom?** (кімге?)

- a) *Who is that man?*
- b) *Who (whom) did you meet there?*
- c) *Whose book is that?*
- d) *What has happened?*
- e) *Which chapter did you like best?*

Self-pronouns (Reflexive pronouns)

Өздік есімдіктері ағылшын тілінде атау септігінде жіктеу есімдіктерімен қабаттасып қолданылады. Жекеше түрдегі есімдікке - **self** ал көпше түрдегі есімдіктерге –**selves** жалғауы жалғанады.

Single form		Plural form	
I myself (өзім)	I can do it myself	We ourselves (өзіміз)	We can do it ourselves
You yourself (өзіңіз)	You can do it yourself	You yourselves (өздеріңіз)	You can do it yourself.
He himself (өзі) She herself (өзі) It itself (өзі)	He can do it himself She can do it herself	They themselves (өздері)	They can do it themselves

Өздік есімдіктер сөйлемде есімдіктен кейін немесе сөйлемнің аяғында келеді. Егер сөйлемде іс-әрекетті жасаушы өзі екендігі анық айқындалып тұрса, зат есімнен кейін өздік есімдік қолданылады.

Мысалы:

*He **himself** solved the problem.*

*I **myself** will present the prizes.*

Negative pronouns

No және noun болымсыздық есімдіктері

No – сөйлемдерде «ешнәрсе, жоқ» мағынасында болымсыз мағына береді.

► **No + noun**

a) *I have **no** ticket. = I haven't a ticket.*

b) *I have **no time** to help you today = I have **any** time to help you today*

None есімдігі зат есімсіз қолданылады.

a) *How much money have you got? '**None.**'*

b) *Is there telephone in the room? No, there is **none***

► **None + plural word** (зат есімнің көпше түрі)

a) ***None** of the libraries were (was) open*

b) ***None** of my friends will be at the party*

Indefinite pronouns

some (something, somebody, someone)

any (anything, anybody, anyone)

no (nothing, nobody, no one)

	Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
Countable / uncountable	Some	Any	Not any / no
People	Someone / somebody Біреу, әлдекім	Anyone / anybody	No one / nobody ешкім
Things	Something Бір нәрсе, бірдеңе	Anything	Nothing Ештеңе, ешнәрсе
Places	Somewhere Бір жерге, бір жерде	Anywhere	Nowhere Ешжерде, ешқайда

► **Some** – белгісіздік есімдігі болымды сөйлемдерде зат есімнің жекеше және көпше түрлерінің алдында келеді.

Зат есімнің көпше түрінің алдында «**бірнеше**» деп аударылады.

a) *Aisha bought **some** books to read.*

b) *Nurdaulet asked me **some** questions.*

► Саналмайтын за есімдердің алдында қолданылады.

a) *There is **some** milk in the fridge.*

b) *I want to buy **some** cheese.*

► Біреуге ұсыныс жасағанда, әлде қандай да бір сұрақ қойғанда, **some** есімдігі қолданылады.

a) *Would you like **some** coffee?*

b) *Can I have **some** cold water?*

► **Any** есімдігі әдетте болымсыз және сұраулы сөйлемдерде қолданылады.

a) *We didn't buy **any** flowers.*

b) *There isn't **anybody** at the door.*

► Болымды сөйлемдерде «**кез келген**» деген мағынаны береді.

a) ***Anybody** can do it.*

b) *May I play **anything** I like?*

Many және Much есімдіктері

► **Many** және **much** есімдіктері «**көп**» деген мағынаны білдіреді. **Many** саналатын, **much** саналмайтын зат есімдердің алдында қойылады. Олар әдетте сұраулы және болымсыз сөйлемдерде қолданылады.

a) ***Many** people attended the meeting.*

b) *Do you spend **much** time on your homework?*

c) *There isn't **much** tea left.*

► **Many** және **much** есімдіктері **very**, **rather**, **too**, **so** және **as**, **how** сөздерімен де қолданылады.

*There are **very many** illustrations in the magazine.*

*Arman has **so many** friends in Astana.*

*I have spent **too much time** on this translation.*

Кейбір болымды сөйлемдерде **'much' a lot (of), lots (of), plenty (of), a good deal (of), a great deal (of)** қолданылады.

► **Many** есімдігінің орнына **a lot (of), lots (of), plenty (of)** қолдануға болады.

*We have **plenty of time**.*

*There are **plenty of English books** on the library.*

(A) little және (A) few есімдіктері		
A few	<p><i>a) Asem has been here only two weeks, but she has already made a few friends.</i> (Асемнің бұл жерге келгеніне екі апта болса да оның бірнеше досы бар)</p> <p><i>a) I feel sorry for her. She has few friends.</i> (Оның аз досы бар).</p>	<p>Few және a few есімдіктері саналатын есімдермен қолданылады.</p> <p>Few – ‘аз’ A few – «бірнеше» деген мағынаны білдіреді</p>
A little	<p><i>I'm very pleased. I have a little money (Мен өте қуаныштымын. Менің біраз ақшам бар).</i></p>	<p>Little, a little саналмайтын зат есімдермен қолданылды.</p>
Little	<p><i>I have little money. I don't even have enough money to buy some food.</i></p>	<p>Little – ‘азғана, жеткіліксіз’ a little – «біраз» деген мағынаны білдіреді.</p>

All және Both есімдіктері	
All есімдігі	Both есімдігі
<p>All есімдігі «барлығы» деген мағынада қолданылып, саналатын және саналмайтын зат есімдермен қолданылады.</p> <p><i>a) All cars have wheels.</i> <i>b) All plants need water.</i> All есімдігі we, you, they жіктеу есімдіктерімен қолданылады.</p> <p><i>a) They all wore shorts. (=All of them wore shorts.)</i></p>	<p>Both есімдігі тек екі адамға, екі затқа қатысты қолданылады. «екеуі де» деп аударылады.</p> <p><i>a) Both cats and dogs are affectionate pets.</i> <i>b) Both my brothers live in Astana.</i> <i>c) He gave me two books yesterday. I have read both.</i> <i>d) Both of these books belong to my mother.</i></p>

<p>b) We all want to go to the match. (=All of us want to go to the match.) Есімдіктен кейін көмекші етістік немесе модальді етістіктің алдында қолданылады.</p> <p>a) We have all read this article. b) You must all go there. All everybody, everything есімдіктерінің орнына қолданыла береді.</p> <p>a) All were of the Бұл same opinion сұраққа on this question. барлығы</p> <p>b) Everybody was бір of the same opinion on ойды this question білдірді.</p>	<p>e) They both graduated from the University last year. = Both of them graduated from the University last year. Both “to be” етістігінен кейін қолданылады.</p> <p>a) You are both tight. b) They were both here. Есімдіктен кейін көмекші етістік немесе модальді етістіктің алдында қолданылады.</p> <p>a) We must both go there. b) We have both been informed about it.</p>
--	---

Either және Neither есімдіктері	
<p>Either «екеуінің біреуі» деп аударылады.</p> <p>a) You may go by either road. b) Either of the examples is correct. Either ... or «немесе» деген мағынаға сай келеді.</p> <p>a) He is either in university or in college b) I'm not sure where he is from. He is either Spanish or Italian. Есте сақтаңыз! Either болымсыз сөйлемдерде де қолданылады. <i>I haven't seen him either.</i> – Мен де оны көрген емеспін.</p>	<p>Neither есімдігі сөйлемде болымсыздық мағына береді.</p> <p>a) Neither of the flowers is good. b) We accepted neither offer. Neither ... nor болымсыз мағына береді.</p> <p>a) Neither Erlan nor Rashid came to the meeting. b) Neither my husband nor I liked this film. Есте сақтаңыз! - <i>She hasn't seen this film yet.</i> – Ол мына фильмді әлі көрген жоқ. - <i>Neither have I</i> – Мен де.</p>

Each (әрқайсысы) және Every (әрбір) есімдіктері

► **Each** есімдігі топтың әрбір мүшесіне қатысты қолданылады:

a) Each student in our group has a Kazakh –English dictionary.

b) Each of us received a ticket to the concert.

► **Every** есімдігі топқа қатысты қолданылып «барлығы» деген мағыаны білдіреді:

a) Every citizen has to pay taxes.

b) I would like to visit every country in the world.

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Find the right pronouns.

1. This is **my** / mine umbrella. **(Your)** / yours umbrella is over there.
2. This is my / mine. The other one is your / yours.
3. Mary and Bob have their / theirs books. In other words, Mary has her / hers and Bob has his / him.
4. A honeybee has two wings on each side of its / it's body.
5. Its / It's true that a homing pigeon will find its / it's way home even though it begins its / it's trip in unfamiliar territory.
6. I have a pet. Its / It's name is Squeak. Its / It's a turtle. Its / It's been my pet for two years.
7. Our / Ours house is almost the same as our / ours neighbors' house. The only difference in appearance is that our / ours is gray and their / theirs is white.
8. When I was in Florida, I observed an interesting fish-eating bird called an anhinga.
It / They dives into the water and spears its / it's prey on its / it's long, pointed bill. After emerging from the water, it / they tosses the fish into the air and catches it / them in mid-air, then swallows it / them headfirst. Its / It's interesting to watch anhinga in action. I enjoy watching it / them.

✎ 2. Full in a few, (very) few, a little, or (very) little.

1. Do you have _____ minutes? I'd like to ask you _____ questions. I need more information.
2. Diana's previous employer gave her a good recommendation because she makes _____ mistakes in her work.
3. After Steve tasted the soup, he added _____ salt to it.
4. I don't like a lot of salt on my food. I add _____ salt to my food.
5. I like music. I like to listen to _____ music after dinner before I begin studying.
6. Driving downtown to the stadium for the baseball game was easy. We got there quickly because there was _____ traffic.
7. Jim is having a lot of trouble adjusting to eighth grade. He seems to be unpopular. Unfortunately, he has _____ friends.

8. We're looking forward to our vacation. we're planning to spend ____ days with my folks and then ____ days with my husband's folks. After that, we're going to a fishing resort in Canada.

9. A.: Are you finished?

B.: Not yet. I need _____ more minutes.

10. A.: Are you finished?

B.: Not yet. I need _____ more time.

11. I was hungry, so I ate ____ nuts.

12. Because the family is very poor, the children have ____ toys.

13. Into each life, _____ rain must fall. (a saying)

14. Samal likes sweet tea. She usually adds honey to her tea.

15. Has anyone ever called you on the phone and tried to sell you something you didn't want? I have _____ patience with people who interrupt my dinner to try to sell me a magazine.

16. He's a lucky little boy. Because his parents have taken good care of him, he has had ____ problems in his young life.

3. Fill in somebody (someone), anybody (anyone), nobody (no one), everybody (everyone), something, nothing, everything:

1. The door is open. There must be ... at home.

2. There is ... wrong with my fountain-pen. It won't write.

3. A blind man cannot see

4. Is there ... in the room? - Yes, there is ... in it.

5. It is too dark here, I cannot see

6. If there is ... in the room you may turn off the light.

7. Can ... recite the poem?

8. We must do ... to help her.

9. Can I do ... for you?

10. There must be ... interesting in the book you read.

11. It is too dark, I can't see ... on the blackboard. May I turn on the light?

12. We can work in Room No. 20. There is ... there.

13. Let's go there at once. I want to see ... with my own eyes.

14. May I come to see you tonight? I've got ... to tell you.

15. Bob is one of our best students, ... knows him.

16. Must we learn ... by heart? – No, must only prepare the poem for test reading.

17. There is ... interesting in this magazine.

18. Is ... away from the lesson?

✎ **4. Fill in the blanks with *some, any, not any, much, many, not much, not many, very little, a little, very few, a few*:**

1. Are there ... college-graduates among your friends? – Yes, there are ...
2. Are there ... students in the next classroom? – No, there aren't ...
3. I haven't got time , I must hurry.
4. I have ... time and can help you.
5. There are ... cups on the table, but there aren't ... glasses.
6. I have very ... time and can't stay any longer.
7. We know very ... about it.
8. I have ... questions to ask.
9. Very ... people know Doctor Sanford.
10. There are ... girls in the family, are there?
11. There's very ... chalk at the blackboard, go and fetch ...
12. There are ... students in the hall, are there?
13. There isn't ... tea in the tea -pot.
14. There isn't ... paper in the box , I need more.
15. There aren't ... pencils in the box, don't take ...
16. It's a secret. Very ... people know about it.
17. Please add ... more tea in my cup.

✎ **5. Fill in the blanks *much, many*:**

1. I haven't visited _____ *city* in the United States.
2. There (isn't/aren't) _____ *money* in my bank account.
3. I haven't gotten _____ *mail* lately.
4. I don't get _____ *letter*.
5. There (isn't/aren't) _____ *hotel* in my hometown.
6. There (is/are) _____ too _____ *furniture* in Anar's living room.
7. There (isn't/aren't) _____ *traffic* today.
8. There (isn't/aren't) _____ *car* on the road today.
9. I can't go with you because I have too _____ *work* to do.
10. A: How _____ *side* does a pentagon have?
B: Five.
11. I couldn't find _____ *information* in that book.
12. How _____ *homework* did the teacher assign?
13. I haven't met _____ *people* since came here.
14. How _____ *postage* does this letter need?
15. I think there (is/are) _____ to _____ *violence* on television.

✎ 6. Neither / either / none / any.

1. We tried a lot of hotels, but _____ of them had any rooms.
2. I took two books with me on holiday, but I didn't read _____ of them.
3. There are a few shops at the end of the street, but _____ of them sell newspapers.
4. You can phone me at _____ time during the evening. I'm always at home.
5. I can meet you next Monday or Friday. Would _____ of those days be convenient for you?
6. John and I couldn't get into the house because _____ of us had a key.
7. _____ eat your dinner or go to your room!
8. "Can you come on Monday or Tuesday?" "I am afraid _____ day is possible".
9. _____ of my brothers remembered my birthday.

✎ 7. Each or every.

1. There were four books on the table. _____ book was a different color.
2. The Olympic Games are held _____ four years.
3. _____ parent worries about their children.
4. In a game of tennis there are two or four players. _____ player has a ticket.
5. Nicola plays football _____ Thursday evening.
6. I understand most of what they said but not _____ word.
7. I get paid _____ four weeks.
8. The book is divided into five parts and _____ of these has three sections.
9. _____ person in turn went to see the doctor.
10. He gave _____ patient the same medicine.

TESTYOURSELF

1. Choose the right pronoun.

That is the girl _____ brother came to see _____

- a) that / we
- b) whose / us
- c) which / they
- d) whom / its
- e) what / us

2. Choose the right pronoun.

If _____ has _____ questions, I'll be pleased to answer them.

- a) someone / any
- b) anyone / any
- c) none / any
- d) anyone / none
- e) someone / none

3. Choose the right pronoun.

I haven't read _____ of these books but George has read _____ of them.

- a) none/some
- b) no / some
- c) any / some
- d) any / any
- e) any / no

4. Choose the right pronoun.

That pen isn't _____. _____ is a green one.

- a) my / my
- b) his / he
- c) mine / mine
- d) I / me
- e) her / its

5. Choose the right pronoun.

If this hat is _____, where have you put _____ ?

- a) your / mine
- b) his / hers
- c) mine / her
- d) ours / their
- e) hers / my

6. Choose the right pronoun.

_____ read the book and _____ took it to the library.

- a) he / me
- b) I / he
- c) you / her
- d) she / her
- e) we / them

7. Choose the right pronoun.

He keeps trying although there is _____ chance of success.

- a) much
- b) few
- c) much
- d) a little
- e) a few

8. Choose the right pronoun.

There are many clocks in the office but _____ of them work properly.

- a) little
- b) few
- c) much
- d) a little
- e) a few

9) Choose the right pronoun.

She wasn't very hungry. She has just had _____ soup.

- a) few
- b) a few
- c) a little
- d) little
- e) much

10. Choose the right pronoun.

There aren't _____ jobs for young people.

- a) much
- b) a few
- c) little
- d) many
- e) much

11. Choose the right pronoun.

Have you bought... in the shop?

- A) anything
- B) somebody
- C) anybody
- D) nobody
- E) any

12. Choose the right pronoun.

Are you waiting for ...?

- A) any
- B) somebody
- C) something
- D) anything
- E) anybody

13. Choose the right pronoun.

I found ... books on the table yesterday.

- A) anybody's
- B) somebody's
- C) nobody
- D) any's
- E) some's

14. Choose the right pronoun.

We have ... new friends. Have you...?

- A) some-some
- B) any- some
- C) any-any
- D) some-any
- E) no, some

15. Choose the right pronoun.
...has phoned me last night.
- A) somebody
B) anybody
C) anything
- D) nothing
E) something
16. Choose the right pronoun.
...advises me to stay at home.
- A) anybody
B) everything
C) everybody
- D) everysome
E) everyany
17. Choose the right pronoun.
Do you know ... here?
- A) any
B) a
C) somebody
- D) some
E) no
18. Choose the right pronoun.
Silence! ... is downstairs.
- A) somebody
B) nobody
C) everybody
- D) no
E) nothing
19. Choose the right pronoun.
Can ... of you help me to close the window?
- A) no
B) none
C) some
- D) any
E) nobody
20. Choose the right pronoun.
...of them were dancing, others were playing cards.
- A) some
B) no
C) nothing
- D) nobody
E) any
21. Our aunt lives in Astana is the capital of Kazakhstan.
- a) Who
b) Which
c) Where
- d) Whom
e) What
22. Choose the right pronoun.
I have gloves ... look like to yours.
- a) how many
b) which
c) what
- d) where
e) who

23. Ask the question underline word.

Vegetarians don't eat meat.

- a) Who doesn't eat meat?
- b) What animals eat meat?
- c) What does eats meat?
- d) What eats dogs?
- e) What don't eat meat?

24. Choose the right pronoun.

Have you got _____ disks with movies?

- a) anything
- b) some
- c) any
- d) this
- e) she

25. Choose the right pronoun.

I'm sorry I forgot to inform you about _____ .

- a) that is
- b) those
- c) this was
- d) that
- e) these is

UNIT III

THE ADJECTIVE - СЫН ЕСІМ

Сын есім – заттың, құбылыстың сынын, сапасын, сипатын, түрін, түсін, т.б. қасиеттерін білдіретін сөз табы.

Сын есімнің түрлері

Simple adjective (Негізгі сын есім)	Derived adjective (Туынды сын есім)	Compound adjective (Күрделі сын есім)	Qualitative adjective (Сапалық сын есім)	Relative adjective (Қатыстық сын есім)
<i>Green, nice, small, good</i>	<i>Useful, helpless, famous, formal</i>	<i>Well-known</i>	<i>Red, big, cold, black</i>	<i>Woolen, golden, wooden.</i>

The degree of comparison

Сын есімнің шырайлары

Absolute Жай шырай	Comparative Салыстырмалы шырай	Superlative Күшейтпелі шырай
<i>nice hot long</i>	<i>nicer hotter longer</i>	<i>nicest hottest longest</i>
<i>easy simple</i>	<i>easier simpler</i>	<i>the easiest the simplest</i>
<i>interesting beautiful comfortable serious</i>	<i>more interesting more beautiful more comfortable more serious</i>	<i>the most interesting the most beautiful the most comfortable the most serious</i>
Кейбір сын есімдердің салыстырмалы және күшейтпелі шырайлары ережеге бағынбайды.		
<i>good bad little many far</i>	<i>better worse less much-more farther -further</i>	<i>the best the worst the lest the most the farthest the furthest</i>

Кейбір сын есімдердің салыстырмалы және күшейтпелі шырайлары *-er, -est* жұрнақтарымен және *more, (the) most* сөзі арқылы жасала береді: *clever, common, cruel, gentle, pleasant, polite, quite, simple, stupid, tired.*

Сын есімдердің шырайларының жасалу жолдары

-er, -est ының алдында -y (егер оның алдында дауыссыз тұрса) –I –ға өзгереді.	<i>Lazy – lazier – the laziest</i> <i>Funny – funnier- the funniest</i>
Егер сын есім дауыссызға аяқталып, оның алдында қысқа дауысты тұрса, онда дауыссыз қосарланады.	<i>Sad-sadder-the saddest</i> <i>Fat-fatter-the fattest</i> <i>Big-bigger-the biggest</i>
Егер сын есім –е жалғауына аяқталса, -er, -est жалғаулары жалғанғанда, бұл жалғау түсіп қалады.	<i>Nice-nicer-the nicest</i>

Есте сақтаңыз!

Ағылшын тілінде бір сөйлемде зат есімді сипаттайтын бірнеше сын есім келуі мүмкін. Ол сын есімдер белгілі бір орын тәртібімен қолданылады.

She is wearing elegant black high-heeled shoes.

THE ADVERB – ҮСТЕУ

Үстеулер – қимылдың түрлі белгісін, мезгілін, мекенін, себебін, мақсатын білдіретін сөз табы.

Үстеулер мағынасына қарай төмендегі топтарға бөлінеді:

<p>Мекен үстеулері – adverbs of place: Амал-әрекеттің болу орны мен бағытын білдіреді:</p>	<p>here there above somewhere everywhere nowhere</p>	<p>Осы жерде сонда (сол жерде) жоғарыда; бір жерде; барлық жерде; еш жерде</p>
<p>Мезгіл үстеулері – adverbs of time Қимылдың мезгілін білдіреді:</p>	<p>already just lately still then soon today yesterday tomorrow</p>	<p>әлдеқашан қазір ғана соңғы, уақытта, жақында; кезге дейін сонан соң жақында бүгін кеше ертең</p>
<p>Мөлшер, күшейту үстеулері – adverbs of degree Амал-әрекеттің мөлшерін, көлемін, белгісі мен сапасын білдіреді.</p>	<p>enough very quite almost nearly even soon little hardly much</p>	<p>жеткілікті өте, ең әбден дерлік жуық, таяу тіпті жақында аз қиыншылық көп.</p>
<p>Қимыл-сын үстеулері – adverbs of manner: Қимылдың жүзеге асу амалын білдіреді.</p>	<p>well, badly, slowly, nicely, politely, calmly</p>	<p>жақсы нашар баяу, жай жақсы сыпайы ұстамды</p>

Жиілік үстеулері – adverbs of frequency:	always usually often sometimes seldom	үнемі әдетте жиі кейде сирек
---	---	--

Үстеулердің шырай формалары

Үстеудің шырай формаларының жасалуы сын есімнің шырай формаларының жасалуымен бірдей. Дара және туынды үстеулердің салыстырмалы шырайы –**er**, жұрнағы, ал күшейтпелі шырайы –**est** жұрнағы жалғану арқылы жасалады.

The degree of comparison Үстеулердің шырайлары

Absolute Жай шырай	Comparative Салыстырмалы шырай	Superlative Күшейтпелі шырай
Slowly Hardly	More slowly More hardly	The most slowly The most hardly
Ерекше жасалатын үстеулер		
Well Badly Much Little Far	Better Worse More Less Farthest	The best The worst The most The least The farthest / furthest

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Fill in the blanks with the comparative or the superlative degrees of the adjectives given in brackets:

1. Your brother is much _____ than mine.
2. This island used to be much _____ (green) before the forest fires.
3. Slow down! You're _____ (fit) than me and I can't keep up!
4. Veronica seems _____ (happy) since she moved schools.
5. It's actually _____ (trendy) to wear your hair up this year.
6. As the time for the performance got nearer, I got (nervous).
7. Old people are often _____ (wise) than young people.
8. Why don't you try and find a _____ (cheap) computer game and save some money?
9. Matt seems to have got even _____ (lazy) that he used to be and almost never studies.
10. If the problem gets any _____ (serious), we may need to inform the manager about it.
11. If you work _____ (quickly), you'll finish sooner and then you can go home earlier.
12. Ben says he's feeling much _____ (well) after his illness.
13. I have even _____ (little) free time this year than I did last year.
14. The news was much _____ (bad) than anyone had feared.
15. You'll need to be able to run _____ (far) than this if you're going to do the marathon.

✎ 2. Fill in the blanks with the comparative or the superlative degrees of the adjectives given in brackets:

1. I met my (good) friend yesterday.
2. Dorothy is (young) in her family.
3. Henry is not (strong) than his elder brother Bob.
4. – It isn't very warm today, is it? – No, it was (warm) yesterday.
5. Your friend looked upset yesterday. I'm glad he looks (happy) today.
6. Where is the (near) post-office, please?
7. February is the (short) month of the year.
8. The Nile is one of the (long) rivers in the world.
9. There are (few) days in February than in March.

10. Robert is (tall) student in our group.
11. In winter the days are (short) than in autumn.
12. The text is (difficult) than the one you read last week.
13. I'm getting (fat) and (fat).
14. The problem was (serious) we expected.
15. Let's go by train. It's much (cheap).

3. Fill in the blanks with one of the words in the box.

Small	big	smaller	bigger
biggest	smallest		

1. The double bass is the _____ of the violin family.
2. The cello is _____ than the double bass.
3. The cello is _____ than the viola.
4. The viola is not as _____ as the cello.
5. The violin is not as _____ as the viola.
6. The violin is the _____ of the violin family.

4. Use the adjectives (adverbs) in brackets in the suitable degrees of comparison:

1. The text of lesson 5 is (interesting) than this one.
2. I live far from the studio but my friend lives (far).
3. This sculpture group is the (beautiful) in the collection.
4. I get up early, but my grandma gets up (early).
5. I have (much) work therefore I have (little) free time than you.
6. Which is the (famous) Russian Picture Gallery?
7. This book on contemporary Art is (good) than the one you gave me last time.
8. I like summer (well) of all because it is the (warm) season.
9. In our group Oleg draws (bad) of all.
10. The Moscow State University building is the (high) in the city.

5. Put the constructions as ...as

1. I need you right away! Please come ... - *Please come as soon as possible.*
2. We can't go any further. This is ... - *This is as far as we can go.*
3. I can't work any faster. I'm working ...
4. An orange is sweeter than a lemon. In other words, an orange is not ...

5. A stream is usually much narrower than a river. In other words, a stream isn't ...

6. I had expected the test to be difficult, and it was. In other words, the test was just ...

7. It's important to use English every day. You should practice speaking English ...

8. You're only old if you feel old. You are ... young ...

9. You might think it's to do, but it's not quite ...

10. It takes an hour to drive to the airport. It takes an hour to fly to Chicago. In other words, it takes

✎ 6. Underline the comparatives those are incorrect in the following sentences. Translate into Kazakh.

1. Stretching a string more tightly gives a highest note.

2. The violin is probably the most importantest of all orchestral instruments.

3. The viols are bowed strings that are more older than the violin family.

4. The viols do not have as bright a sound the violin family.

5. The heavier the string, the low the note it sounds.

6. Small violins have short strings than full-sized instruments, but they play the same notes.

7. Andres Segovia is the more famous classical guitarist in the world.

8. It is said that a special varnish used on a violin helps to produce the more beautiful tone.

✎ 7. Adverb or adjective?

1. The driver of the car was _____ injured. (serious / seriously)

2. The driver of the car had _____ injures. (serious / seriously)

3. I think you behaved very _____ (selfish / selfishly)

4. Rose is _____ upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)

5. There was a _____ change in the weather. (sudden/suddenly)

6. Everybody at the party was _____ dressed. (colorful / colorfully)

7. Linda likes wearing _____ clothes (colorful / colorfully)

8. She fell and hurt herself quite _____. (bad / badly)

9. He says he didn't do well at school because he was _____ taught. (bad / badly)

10. Don't go up that ladder. It doesn't look _____. (safe / safely)

11. He looked at me _____ when I interrupted him. (angry/angrily)

TEST YOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant.

It was _____ music I have ever heard.

- a) more beautiful
- b) less beautiful
- c) the most beautiful

- d) beautiful
- e) most beautiful

2. Choose the right variant.

It's _____ powder I have ever used.

- a) good
- b) –
- c) the best

- d) best
- e) better

3. Choose the right variant.

John is _____ of all to act.

- a) quickest
- b) quick
- c) –

- d) quicker
- e) the quickest

4. Choose the right variant.

He is _____ strong _____ his brother.

- a) as / like
- b) similar / as
- c) as / as

- d) strong / than
- e) so / as

5. Choose the right variant.

I have _____ time than he does.

- a) bigger
- b) larger
- c) most

- d) less
- e) least

6. Choose the right variant.

Mark Twain, one of _____ and _____ American writers, lived in a small town in his children.

- a) greater / most popular
- b) great / more popular
- c) the greatest / most popular

- d) more great / the most popular
- e) most great / the popular

7. Choose the right variant.

Your English is much _____ now. You made _____ mistakes this time.

- a) best / least
- b) better / less
- c) the best / less

- d) good / less
- e) best / the least

8. Choose the right variant.

Do you have _____ or _____ rain this autumn than the last one.

- a) many / little
- b) more / less
- c) more / fewer
- d) much / less
- e) more / few

9. Choose the right variant.

Do you have _____ or _____ sunny days this summer?

- a) more / few
- b) many / less
- c) much / little
- d) many / few
- e) more / less

10. Choose the right variant.

Of the four girls Marcia is _____

- a) prettiest
- b) prettier
- c) –
- d) the prettiest
- e) prettier

11. Find the positive adjective:

- a) Poor
- b) More difficult
- c) Less
- d) The most interesting
- e) Cleverer

12. Find the positive adjective:

- a) Better
- b) Light
- c) More
- d) The best
- e) The most important

13. Find the positive adjective:

- a) More difficult
- b) Cleaner
- c) Small
- d) The most important
- e) Better

14. Find the superlative adjective:

- a) Little
- b) More inserting
- c) Bad
- d) Young
- e) The biggest

15. Find the superlative adjective:

- a) Easier
- b) Higher
- c) More active
- d) The longest
- e) Comfortable

16. Find the superlative adjective:

- a) More important
- b) The most important
- c) Comfortable
- d) Shorter
- e) Longer

17. Find the superlative adjective:

- a) The most interesting
- b) Better
- c) Good

- d) More difficult
- e) Interesting

18. Find the comparative adjective:

- a) Younger
- b) Many
- c) The smaller

- d) Good
- e) The best

19. Find the comparative adjective:

- a) The biggest
- b) More difficult
- c) New

- d) The least
- e) Hot

20. Choose the right variant.

- Please, give me this bouquet of flowers. I think it is _____ than the rest ones.

- But it's _____ .

- Never mind. I'll buy it.

- a) beautiful / expensive
- b) more beautiful / more expensive
- c) the most beautiful / most expensive

- d) beautiful / most expensive
- e) most beautiful / most expensive

UNIT IV

THE NUMERAL - САН ЕСІМ

Заттың немесе заттық ұғымдар мен құбылыстардың санын, мөлшерін, ретін білдіретін сөз табы сан есім деп аталады.

1.1. Есептік сан есімдер “қанша” деген сұраққа жауап береді.

For example:

5 – *five*

356 – *three hundred and fifty-six*

56 – *fifty six*

101 – *a hundred and one*

four-fourteen – forty;

five – fifteen – fifty

► **Hundred, thousand, million, dozen** сан есімдерінің алдына **a** белгісіздік артикльі немесе **one** деген сан есім қойылады.

For example:

a (one) hundred, a (one) thousand, a (one) million

► Көпше түрде **hundred, thousand, million, dozen** сан есімдеріне –s жалғауы жалғанбайды, оларға қатысты зат есімге жалғанады.

For example:

two million dollars, three dozen bottles

► Алайда **hundred, thousand, million, dozen** сан есімдері жүздің, мыңның белгісіз санын көрсетсе –s жалғауы жалғануы мүмкін. Бұл жағдайда олар зат есім болып саналады да, **of** қосымшасы арқылы қолданылады.

For example:

Hundreds of students were present at the meeting.

Thousands of people greeted the Russian representatives.

1.2 Реттік сан есімдер патша аттары, ханшайым және Рим папасы аттарымен қолданылады.

Henry the Eighth – Генри VIII

Elizabeth the Second – Елизавета II

1.3 АҒЫЛШЫН ТІЛІНДЕГІ ДАТАЛАР

30 March 1995 – the thirtieth of March or March the thirtieth, nineteen ninety-five

16.06.1900 – the sixteenth of June or June the sixteenth, nineteen hundred

2006 – two thousand and six or twenty or six

1.4 Fractional numbers – Бөлшектік сан есімдер

<i>1/3 - third</i> <i>1 / 2 – a (one) half</i> <i>2/3 – two thirds</i> <i>1/4 - a (one) quarter, a (one) fourth</i> <i>5/6 – five sixth</i> <i>2/3 – two thirds or two over three</i>	<i>0.1 – zero point one (AmE)</i> <i>0.1 – nought point one or point one</i> <i>0.01 – nought point nought one or point nought one</i> <i>2.35 – two point three five</i> <i>52.35 – five two (fifty two) point three five</i> <i>Ондық бөлшектерде бүтін сан бөлшектен нүкте арқылы бөлінеді де ‘point’ болып, ал 0 (нөл) nought немесе zero болып оқылады.</i>
--	---

1.5 Telling the time

- What is the time? What time is it?

- *10 a.m. – it is ten a.m.*
- *10.15 – it’s a quarter past ten.*
- *6.30 – it’s six thirty or half past six.*
- *7 p.m. – it is seven p.m.*
- *8.45. – it’s a quarter to nine.*
- *4.30 – it’s four thirty or half four.*
- *3.10 – it’s ten past three*

a.m. – ante meridiem – түске дейін

p.m. – post meridiem – түстен кейін

1.6 Money

British money

- *1 £ - one pound*
- *5.20 – five pounds twenty*
- *40p – forty pence*
- *1 p – one penny*

American money

- *\$ 1 – one dollar*
- *1 c – one cent*
- *\$ 9.50 – nine dollars fifty*

European money

- *1 € - one euro*
- *0.50 € - fifty cents*
- *6.50 € - six euros fifty*

1.7 Telephone numbers

Телефонның әрбір цифры жеке оқылады. Егер телефонның номері бірдей сан болса, онда **double** сөзі қолданылады.

For example:

▪ 50 44 38 65 33 – five oh double four three eight six five double three

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Write down in written form

1. 100 - _____
2. £ 1.450 - _____
3. 1.000 - _____
4. \$1.85 - _____
5. €2.000 - _____
6. 3rd - _____
7. 2nd - _____
8. £ 29.99 - _____
9. 55.000 - _____
10. £25.000 - _____

✎ 2. Put the words in necessary form:

1. He had to sign his name five _____ times. (hundred)
2. Wee export 40 _____ tons a year. (million)
3. I just need to borrow a few _____ pounds. (hundred)
4. I've told you _____ times. (million)
5. _____ refugees are flooding into the (million)
6. people were killed during the War II. country. (thousand)
7. Could I have two _____ eggs? (dozen)
8. News agency gets _____ reports every day. (hundred)
9. A small town only 55 _____ people in it. (thousand)
10. Claire earns 15 _____ pounds a year as a teacher. (thousand)

✎ 3. Give the dates in written form.

1. 15 May 1964 - _____
2. 9 March 1973 - _____
3. December 7, 2005 - _____
4. July 11, 1982 - _____
5. November 10, 2000 - _____
6. 27.05.1998 - _____
7. 03.07.2007 - _____
8. 28.10.1999 - _____
9. 04.08.1974 - _____
10. 05.02.1950 - _____

TEST YOURSELF

1. Find the right equivalent:

Year 1950.

- a) Nineteen hundred
- b) Ninety fifty
- c) The fiftieth
- d) Ninety fifteen
- e) Nineteen fifty

2. Find the right equivalent:

'25/11'

- a) The twentieth and fifth of November.
- b) The twenty-fifth of November.
- c) The twenty-fifth of November.
- d) The twentieth fifth of November.
- e) The thirty and fifth of November.

3. Find the right answer:

One hundred and one minus forty-six is... .

- a) sixty
- b) fifty-four
- c) forty-four
- d) fifty-five
- e) seventy

4. Read the number:

250,450

- a) Two hundred fifty thousand four hundred fifty.
- b) Two hundred and fifty thousand and four hundreds and fifty.
- c) Tow hundreds and fifty thousands four hundred and fifty.
- d) Two hundred and fifty thousand four hundred and five.
- e) Two hundred and fifty thousand four hundred and fifty.

5. Read the number:

\$ 83.20

- a) Eighty three dollar and twenty cents.
- b) Eighty three dollars twenty cents.
- c) Eighty three dollars and twenty cents.
- e) Eighty three dollars and twenty cent.

6. Choose the right variant.

The year 1917.

- a) One thousand nine hundred and seventeen.
- b) One thousand nine hundred seventeen.
- c) One thousand nine hundreds and seventeen.
- d) One thousand and seventeen.
- e) Nineteen seventeen

7. Choose the right variant.

From the years 1941 to 1945.

- a) Nineteen four one to nineteen forty five.
- b) Nineteen forty one to nineteen forty fives.
- c) Nineteen forty one to ninety forty five.
- d) Ninety forty one to nineteen forty five.
- e) Nineteen forty one to nineteen forty five.

8. Choose the right variant.

Say what century it is: 2005.

- a) The twenty-one century.
- b) Ninety century
- c) The twenty-first century.
- d) The nineteenth century
- e) Nineteen century

9. Find the right variant of the ordinal number:

- a) twelfth
- b) twenty-one
- c) eleven
- d) twelveth
- e) two

10. Find the right variant of the cardinal number:

'265'

- a) two hundred sixty-five.
- b) two hundred sixty-fifth.
- c) two hundreds and sixty-five.
- d) two hundreds sixty-five.
- e) two hundred and sixty-five.

11. 8. Choose the right variant.

'9/3'

- a) The ninth of March.
- b) March and the nine.
- c) Nine and March.
- d) The ninth and March.
- e) The nine and March.

12. Choose the right variant.

Fifty-three plus sixty-eight is

- a) one hundred
- b) a hundred and twenty
- c) hundred and forty-six
- d) two hundred
- e) one hundred and twenty-one

13. Choose the right variant.

Date: September 30?

- a) Thirty of September
- b) September thirteen
- c) The thirtieth of September.
- d) The thirteenth of September
- e) Thirty September.

14. Choose the right variant.

8579

- a) Eight thousand five hundred and seventy nine.
- b) Eight thousand five hundred seventy nines.
- c) Eighteen thousand five hundreds seventy nine.
- d) Eighteen thousand five hundred seventy nine.
- e) Eight thousands five hundred seventy nine.

15. Choose the right variant.

How do you say the sum “\$ 63 million”?

- a) Dollars sixty-three million.
- b) Sixty-three million dollars.
- c) Sixty and three millions dollars.
- d) Dollars sixties-three millions.
- e) Sixty-tree millions dollars.

16. Choose the right variant.

How do you say the following big number “ 624,112” ?

- a) Six-two-four and eleven-two
- b) Six hundreds, twenty-four, one hundred and twelve thousand.
- c) Six hundred and twenty-four thousand., one hundred and twelve
- d) Six hundreds and twenty-four thousands., eleven hundreds and two
- e) Six hundreds and twenty-four thousands., one hundreds and twelve

17. Find the right variant of the year.

‘1996’

- a) One thousand and nine hundred and ninety six.
- b) One double nine six.
- c) One thousand nine hundred ninety-six.
- d) One ninety-nine and six.
- e) Nineteen ninety-six.

18. Find the right variant of the ordinal number:

‘8.000.000’

- a) Eight thousand and hundred.
- b) Eight millions.
- c) Eight million.
- d) Eight thousands and hundreds.
- e) Eight thousands and a hundred.

19. Find the right variant:

Yesterday I phoned you for a times, but you didn't pick up the receiver.

- a) Hundredth.
- b) Hundreds.
- c) Hundred.
- d) The hundreds.
- e) The hundred.

20. Find the right variant:

Our lessons begin on ... of January.

- a) two
- b) twelve
- c) the twelfth
- d) twelve
- e) eleven

21. My watch is ... minutes slow.

- a) tenth
- b) a second
- c) twenty
- d) the two
- e) twelfth

22. Read the telephone number:

235 677 105

- a) two five three six double seven one
- b) two three five six double seven oh five
- c) two three five six double five oh seven
- d) two three five six double seven one oh five
- e) two three five double six seven one oh five

23. Choose the right variant.

_____ are starving in the world today.

- a) Thousands people
- b) Thousands of people
- c) Thousands of peoples
- d) Thousands peoples
- e) Thousand of peoples

24.. Choose the right variant.

How do you say the number "101"?

- a) Ones hundreds one
- b) One hundreds one
- c) One hundred and one
- d) One and one hundred
- e) One thousand ones

25. Choose the right variant of the year.

2000

- a) twenty oh oh
- b) two thousand
- c) twenty thousand
- d) twenty double oh
- e) twenty hundred

UNIT V

THE VERB – ETICTIK

Etictiktің түрлері

1. Негізгі etictik	to run, to go, to try, to speak, to take
2. Туынды etictik	to unpack, to shorter, to discover, to discharge, to rename
3. Күрделі etictik	to look through, to look up, to broadcast

Шақтар төрт топқа бөлінеді:

1. Indefinite (Simple) Tenses
2. Continuous (Progressive) Tenses
3. Perfect Tenses
4. Perfect Continuous Tenses

THE PRESENT SIMPLE (INDEFINITE) TENSE

The Present Indefinite үнемі істелетін кәсіби және басқа күнбе-күнгі әрекетті, адамзатқа, ғаламатқа тән үйреншікті, дағдылы жалпы қимыл, қозғалыс, амал, іс-әрекетті көрсетеді.

1. A habitual action – тұрақты, әдеттегі, жиі қайталанатын әдетке айналған іс-әрекет

I run every morning.

She works at a restaurant.

2. A General fact – Жалпыға белгілі мәлім ақиқат, шындық

The sun rises in the east.

It rarely rains in the desert.

3. Future timetables – кестеге байланысты келешекте болатын іс-әрекеттер

The ticket office opens at 9:00.

The plane to Astana takes off at 6.40 a.m.

► Present Indefinite Tense жасалу жолы

Сұраулы және болымсыз сөйлемдерде **-do, -does** көмекші етістігі қолданылады.

► Жиі қолданылатын мезгіл пысықтауыштары:

always, ever, never, as a rule, every day, (week, month, year), now and then, generally, seldom, occasionally, usually, regularly, rarely, sometimes, from time to time.

Positive		Negative		
I You We They	sleep	I You We They	do not (don't)	sleep
He She It	sleeps	He She It	does not (doesn't)	sleep

Questions			Answers		
Do	I you we they	sleep?	Yes,	I you we they	do
			No,		do not (don't)
Does	he she it	sleep?	Yes,	he she it	does
			No,		does not (doesn't)

The Present Indefinite формасындағы етістіктерге бірінші, екінші жақта жекеше және көпше түрде жіктік жалғау жалғанбайды, тек жекеше түрде үшінші жақта жіктік жалғау –s болып жалғанады.

► Етістіктің болымсыз және сұраулы түрі **-do, -does** көмекші етістігі арқылы жасалады.

► Егер етістік **-ch, -ss, -sh, -x** және **-o** жалғауларына аяқталса, **-es** жалғауы жалғанады.

I brush – he brushes

I teach – he teaches

I fix – he fixes

I go – he goes

► Егер етістік «**дауыссыз + у**» аяқталса, **-y** әрпі **-i** әрпіне айналады да, **-ies** жалғауы жалғанады.

I try – he tries

► Егер етістік «**дауысты + у**» аяқталса, **-s** жалғауы жалғанады.

I buy – he buys

Adverbs of Frequency	
<p>always almost always usually often frequently generally sometimes occasionally</p> <hr/> <p>seldom rarely hardly ever almost never not ever, never</p>	<p>Жиілік үстеулері әдетте сөйлемнің ортасында қолданылады. a) I sometimes get up at 6:30 b) Sometimes I get up at 6:30</p>
<p>Subject Freq.adv Verb a) Omar always tells the truth.</p>	<p>Жиілік үстеулері бастауыш және етістіктің ортасында келеді.</p>
<p>Subject be Freq.adv. b) Mansur is always on time.</p>	<p>Жиілік үстеулері be (am, is, are) көмекші етістігінен кейін келеді.</p>
<p>c) Do you always eat breakfast?</p>	<p>Сұраулы сөйлемдерде жиілік үстеулері бастауыштан кейін келеді.</p>
<p>d) I usually don't eat breakfast. e) Dana doesn't always eat breakfast.</p>	<p>Болымсыз сөйлемдерде жиілік үстеулердің көбі болымсыз етістіктің алдында келеді. (always, ever үстеулерінің басқасы)</p>
<p>f) Дұрыс: He never eats meat. Бұрыс: He doesn't never eat meat.</p>	<p>Rarely, hardly, ever, never болымсыз үстеулері болымсыз мағынадағы етістікпен қолданылмайды.</p>

THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE (CONTINUOUS) TENSE

1. An activity that is in progress at the moment – қазір, берілген уақытта болып жатқан іс-әрекет.

Mary is watching TV right now.

I'm taking 5 courses this semester.

2. Future arrangements – алдын ала іске асырылуы ойластырылып қойған іс-әрекет

I'm going to Sweden next winter.

They're moving into their new house next week.

Present Progressive Tense жасалу жолы:

Хабарлы сөйлемде *am/is/are* көмекші етістіктері және V+ing
Сұраулы және болымсыз сөйлемдерде *am/is/are* көмекші етістіктері қолданылады.

Мезгіл пысықтауыштар:

now, right now, at the moment, always, constantly, still.

Positive		Negative		
I	am working	I	am not	working
You We They	are working	You We They	are not (aren't)	
He She It	is working	He She It	is not (isn't)	

Questions			Answers		
Am	I	working?	Yes,	I	am
Are	you we they		Yes,	you we they	are
			No,		are not (aren't)
Is	he she it		Yes,	he she it	is
		No,	is not (isn't)		

► Егер етістік –е жалғауына аяқталса, - **ing** суффиксі жалғанғанда да, сөз соңындағы –е әрпі түсіп қалады.

dance – dancing

► Егер етістік –l жалғауына аяқталса суффиксі жалғанғанда -l жалғауы екі еселенеді.

travel – travelling

► Егер етістік –ie жалғауына аяқталса –у + -ing , жалғанады.

lie-lying; die-dying

Ағылшын тілінде сезімді білдіретін кейбір етістіктер (*verbs of mental and emotional state*) осы шақа байланысты болса да, (-ing) формасын қабылдамайды.

Common verbs of state condition

1. Mental state		
know	understand	want
believe	suppose	need
imagine	remember	desire
realize	recognize	mean
feel	think	
doubt	forget	
2. Emotional state		
love	astonish	envy
hate	appreciate	surprise
care	fear	prefer
like	amaze	mind
dislike	please	
3. Possession		
possess		own
have		belong
4. Sense perceptions		
taste		smell
hear		feel
see		
5. Other existing states		
seem	appear	resemble

cost exist look owe matter	weigh consist of sound equal contain	be include look like
--	--	----------------------------

► Бірақ кейбір етістіктер **–ing** формасын қабылдайды.

For example:

- a) *Yum! This food tastes good. I like it very much.*
- b) *This food is tasting good. I'm liking it very much.*
- c) *The chef is in his kitchen. He is tasting the sauce.*
- d) *It tastes too salty.*
- e) *He doesn't like it.*

A, D, E мысалдарында етістік сезім және қабылдау сезімдерді білдіргендіктен олар **–ing** формасын қабылдамайды.

B C мысалдарында аспаздың іс-әрекетін баяндағандықтан, **–ing** формасын қажет етеді.

THE PAST SIMPLE (INDEFINITE) TENSE

1. An action that began and ended at a specific time in the past – іс-әрекет, оқиғалар өткен шақта басталып, өткен шақта аяқталады.

We won a gold medal last year.

They spent their holidays in Switzerland last month. They had a great time.

2. An action that occurred over a period of time and was completed in the past – іс-әрекеттердің бірінен кейін бірінің келуі, қарапайым қайталанып келетін іс-әрекеттер

She cooked the meal first than she ate with her family.

Past Indefinite Tense жасалу жолы.

Сұраулы және болымсыз формада **did** көмекші етістігі қолданылады.

Хабарлы сөйлемде дұрыс етістіктерде (**regular verbs**) инфинитив формасына **ed** жалғанады.

Бұрыс етістіктер (**irregular verbs**) инфинитивтің 2-ші формасын қабылдайды (бұрыс етістіктер таблицасынан көре аласыздар).

Мезгіл үстеулер: *last week, last night, yesterday, an hour ago, in 1973, during*

Positive		Negative		
I You We They	swam	I You We They	did not (didn't)	swim
He She It	swam	He She It	did not (didn't)	swim

Questions			Answers		
Did	I you we they	swim?	Yes,	I you we they	did
			No,		did not (didn't)
Did	he she it	swim?	Yes,	he she it	did
			No,		did not (didn't)

THE PAST PROGRESSIVE (CONTINUOUS) TENSE

1. An interrupted action - өткен шақта екі іс-әрекеттің бір уақытта болуы

*While the children were watching TV, their mother was cooking.
I was watching the Olympics on TV, when he walked in.*

2. A repeated or continuous state in the past - өткен шақта белгілі уақыт аралығында болған іс-әрекет

*At three o'clock yesterday afternoon they were sitting at a café.
I was making many new friends at the Olympic Village.*

Past Progressive Tense жасалу жолы.

Past Progressive Tense to be көмекші етістігі was/were және негізгі етістікке **-ing** жалғау жалғану арқылы жасалады.

► Жиі қолданылатын мезгіл пысықтауыштар:
while, all day long, all the time, the whole evening

Positive		Negative		
I	was playing	I	was not	playing
You We They	was playing	You We They	were not (weren't)	
He She It	was playing	He She It	was not (wasn't)	

Questions			Answers		
Was	I	playing?	Yes,	I	was
Were	you we they		Yes,	you we they	were
			No,		were not (weren't)
Was	he she it		Yes,	he she it	was
		No,	was not (wasn't)		

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous instead of the infinitives in brackets:

Mark: Are you looking (you/look) for someone?

Alan: Yes, I need (I need) to speak to Neil. he isn't in his office.

Mark: (1) (he / talk) to the boss at the moment.
(2) (I / think) (3) (they / discuss) money.

Alan: Oh, right. And what about you? (4) (you / look) for someone too?

Mark: Yes, Linda. (5)..... (you / know) where she is?

Alan: Oh, she isn't here today. She only (6) work four days a week. (7) (she / not / work) on Fridays. She'll be here on Monday.

Mark: Thank you. (8) (you / know) a lot of about Linda.

Alan: Well, most days (9) (I / give) her a lift, or (10) (she / give) me one. (11) (She / live) quite close to me. (12) (it / save) petrol.

Mark: Yes, of course. Good idea. Yes, (13) (I / agree). Well, (14) (I / waste) my time here then, I'll get back to my computer.

✎ 2. Find the right form of the verb in the dialogue.

Emma: Hi, Mike. What **do you look / are you looking at?**

Michael: Oh, hi. These are photos of mine when I was a child.

Emma: Oh, look at this one. **I think / I'm thinking** you look lovely, Mike.

Michael: **I have / I'm having** some more photos here.

Emma: Look at this. Why such a big coat?

Michael: It was my brother's. That's why **it didn't / it wasn't fitting** properly.

Emma: Oh, **I see / I'm seeing**. And **you have / you're having** your tea here. And in this one **you think / you're thinking** about something very serious.

Michael: This is a photo of the village. **I come / I'm coming** from.

Emma: Oh, that's nice.

Michael: And I caught this fish, look. **It weighted / it was weighing** about half a kilo.

Emma: What a nice little boy!

✎ 3. Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous?

1. Elizabeth **usually goes / is usually going** to bed at around eleven o'clock.
2. Dan **talks / is taking** on the other phone right now.
3. We **don't eat / aren't eating** any meat at the moments as we're both on a diet.
4. Does air **travel get / I air travel getting** increasingly.
5. My mum **calls / is calling** me every weekend without fail.
6. How much **do babysitters generally earn / are babysitters generally earning?**
7. **You always come / You're always coming** up with excuses for not having done your homework. It's so annoying!
8. **I don't go / I'm not going** out much during the week but **I always try / I'm always trying** to go out somewhere on Saturday night.
9. No, the train **does stop / is stopping** at Cirencester on Saturdays.
10. My mum **takes / is taking** part in ice-skating competitions almost every weekend.

✎ 4. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. My elder sister (to have) a music lesson. She always (to have) a music lesson on Friday.
2. Who (to sing) in the next room?
3. Father (to read) a newspaper. He usually (to read) something before going to bed.
4. Mother (to cook) breakfast in the kitchen. She always (to cook) in the mornings.
5. Who you (to wait) for? – I (to wait) for Ann, we must leave in ten minutes.
6. It often (to rain) in autumn.
7. Do not go out, it (to rain) heavily.
8. You (to understand) the use of the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous quite well? 9. What you (to smile), Kitty?
11. I often (to meet) you at the corner of this street. You (to wait) for anybody?
12. You usually (to go) through the park? – Not usually, it's only today that I (to go) here.
13. You (to hear) anything? – Yes, somebody (to knock) at the door.
14. They still (to discuss) where to go now.

✎ **5. Put the verbs in brackets into Present Indefinite or Present Continuous:**

1. Look up! The sun so brightly. (to shine). 2. My uncle usually.... newspapers in the evening. (to read). 3. As a rule, my sister all housework in the evening. (to do). 4. Go and see! our children soundly. (to sleep). 5. Our family usually out of town on Sundays. (to go). What the students at the moment? (to do). Some of the students themselves. While the others the dialogue by heart. (to record, to learn) 6. ... your nephew English books in the original? (to read) 7. Hallo! Where you ? (go) – I to the university (to go). you there, too? (to go) – No, I not usually to the University in the morning. (to go) I evening classes (to attend). 9. you the words of this English song? (to understand) – Yes, I that now I them (to think, to understand). 10. Whom you there? (to see)

✎ **6. Open the brackets, using Past Simple or Past Continuous.**

1. When Martin (**arrive**) home, Anna (**talk**) to someone on the phone. Martin (**start**) to get the tea.

2. I (**lie**) in the bath when the phone (**ring**). It (**stop**) after a few rings.

3. It (**be**) cold when we (**leave**) the house that day, and a light snow (**fall**).

4. Your friend who (**come**) here the other day (**seem**) very nice. I (**enjoy**) meeting her.

5. When I (**see**) the man, he (**stand**) outside the bank. He (**have**) a black baseball cap on.

6. When I (**open**) the cupboard door, a pile of books (**fall**) out.

7. I (**walk**) along the street when I suddenly (**feel**) something hit me in the back. I (**no/know**) what it was.

8. We (**go**) to London yesterday, but on the way we (**hear**) about a bomb scare in Oxford Street. So we (**drive**) back home straight away.

9. Something very strange (**happen**) to me way home from work yesterday afternoon. I (**drive**) along the bypass at the time. Suddenly I (**see**) my mother in the seat beside me. But she died three years ago.

10. When my mother saw me I (**play**) with the mud.

TESTYOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

I _____ an interesting book at the moment. I'll return it to the library when I've finished

- a) read
- b) am reading
- c) shall read
- d) would read
- e) had read

2. George _____ to the dentist every month.

- a) is going
- b) goes
- c) will go
- d) has gone
- e) shall go

3. Where _____ the car?

- a) did you park
- b) did you parked
- c) parked you
- d) you parked
- e) shall park

4. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

She (still/hesitate) whether to continue the experiments or not.

- a) Is hesitating
- b) Hesitates
- c) Hesitated
- d) Are hesitates
- e) Will hesitates

5. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

Usually she (paint) pictures in the living-room.

- a) Paints
- b) Is painting
- c) Is paints
- d) Were paints
- e) Do paints

6. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

What languages ... you (speak)?

- a) Was ... speaking;
- b) Do ... speak
- c) Is ... speaking
- d) Were ... speaking
- e) Are ... speaking

7. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

My mother (do) a lot of work every day.

- a) Will Doing
- b) Is doing
- c) Are doing
- d) Does
- e) Is done

8. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

... you (tell) a lie now?

- a) Are ... telling
- b) Do ... tell.
- c) Does ... tell
- d) Did ... tell
- e) Doing... tell

9. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

What ... they usually (have) for supper?

- a) Do ... having
- b) Are ... having.
- c) Do ... have
- d) Does ... having
- e) Are ... have

10. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

Who ... (listen) to the radio now?

- a) Did listening
- b) Listens
- c) Are listening
- d) Do listening
- e) Is listening

11. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

As a rule, she (wear) beautiful clothes.

- a) Wearing
- b) Is wearing
- c) Wears
- d) Was wears
- e) Will wear

12. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

How ... you (feel) at that moment?

- a) Do ... feel
- b) Are ... feeling
- c) Do ... feeling
- d) Does ... feeling
- e) Was ... feeling

13. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple or Present Continuous?

Usually I (play) the violin but now I (play) the piano.

- a) Play; am playing
- b) Am playing/play
- c) Is playing/play
- d) Are playing/play
- e) Am playing/is play

14. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

At nine o'clock yesterday morning we _____ for the bus.

- a) wait
- b) waiting
- c) was waiting
- d) were waiting
- e) is waiting

15. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

When I looked round the door, the baby _____ quietly.

- a) is sleeping
- b) slept
- c) was sleeping
- d) were sleeping
- e) are sleeping

16. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Elvis Prestley _____ in 1977.

- a) dies
- b) had died
- c) died
- d) have died
- e) has died

17. When Peter opened the door, the children _____ round the fir tree:

- a) danced
- b) are dancing
- c) were dancing
- d) dance
- e) is dancing

18. We _____ when we were at university.

- a) were meeting
- b) have met
- c) have been meeting
- d) met
- e) has meeting

19. When Mark arrived, the Johnsons _____ dinner, but stopped in order to talk to him.

- a) were having
- b) had
- c) had been having
- d) was having
- e) has been having

20. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

I (walk) home after the party yesterday.

- a) Walking
- b) Was walking
- c) Was walked
- d) Were walking
- e) Walked

21. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

He (drive) along the highway.

- a) Do drove
- b) Was driving
- c) Was drove
- d) Drove
- e) Drive

22. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

When I (arrive) my son (have) dinner.

- a) Arrived; was having
- b) Was arriving; had
- c) Were arriving; had
- d) Was arriving; has
- e) Was arriving; have

23. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

Our team (fly) to London for football game last night.

- a) Did flying
- b) Was flying
- c) Were flying
- d) Flew
- e) Does flying

24. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

Mr. Grey (not/understand) what I (sing).

- a) Didn't understand; was singing
- b) Wasn't understanding; sang
- c) Weren't understanding; sang
- d) Wasn't understanding; sing
- e) Wasn't understanding; was sing

25. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

While we (work) my dog (hurt) its leg.

- a) were working; hurt
- b) worked; was hurting
- c) Working; was hurting
- d) Worked; hurting
- e) Work; hurting

26. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

Kelly (enjoy) the evening but I (want) to go home.

- a) Was enjoying; want
- b) Enjoyed; was wanting
- c) Was enjoying; wanted
- d) Enjoying; wanted
- e) Enjoy; want

27. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

When...it(happen)?

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| a) Do ... happening | d) Did ... happen |
| b) Was ... happening. | e) Does ... happening |
| c) Were ... happening | |

28. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

He (sit) in the garden when Tom (come).

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| a) Was sitting; came | d) Were sat; was coming |
| b) Sat; was coming | e) Sat; was come |
| c) Sat; coming | |

29. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Past Simple or Past Continuous?

When my mother (cook) the telephone (ring).

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| a) Was cooking; was rang | d) Was cooking; rang |
| b) Cooked; was ringing | e) Was cook; rang |
| c) Were cooking; rang | |

30. I saw John in the park. He _____ on the grass and _____ a book.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) were sitting, reading | d) sitting, was reading |
| b) sitting, reading | e) was sitting, was reading |
| c) was sitting, reading | |

UNIT VI

THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

Have (has) + Past Participle

1. An action that began in the past and continues in the present - Бұрын басталып, белгілі уақытқа созылып, әлі де жалғасып жатқан іс-әрекет.

They have been friends for five years.

She has been training for two years.

2. Repetition of an action before now – қазіргі уақытпен байланысы бар аяқталған іс-әрекет

He has been to the Olympic several times.

Alihan has received three e-mails this morning.

Present Perfect tense жасалу жолы

Present Perfect tense **have, has** көмекші етістіктері және етістіктің 3-ші формасы (Past Participle)

► Жиі қолданылатын мезгіл пысықтауыштар

already, ever, never, just, yet, lately, so far

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	have	bought	I You We They	have not	bought
He She It			He She It		

Questions			Answers		
Have	I you we they	bought?	Yes,	I you we they	have
			No,		have not
Has	he she it	bought?	Yes,	he she it	has
			No,		has not

Since және For сөздерінің қолданылуы

<p>since seven o'clock since Monday since December I have been here since 1983 since February 3, 2007 since last month</p>	<p>Since сөзі ай, күн, сағат, жылдармен қолданылады. Since бір іс-әрекеттің белгілі бір уақытта өткен шақта басталғанын және қазіргі уақытқа дейін жалғасып жатқандығын көрсетеді.</p>
<p>I have lived here since I was a child</p>	
<p>for twenty minutes for three hours for seven days I have been here for about three weeks for almost five month for many years for a long time</p>	<p>For сөзі уақыт созылыңқылығын көрсетеді. Егер зат есім – s жалғауына аяқталса (<i>hours, days, weeks</i>) for қолданылады.</p>

THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Have (has) been + Present Participle

1. Expressing the duration of an action that began in the past and continues in the present - Бұрын басталып, белгілі уақытқа созылып, қазір де жалғасып жатқан іс-әрекетті білдіреді.

John has been swimming for two hours.

He has been waiting for the bus for 20 minutes.

2. An action that began in the past and has just recently ended – Бұрын басталып, белгілі уақытқа созылып, қазір ғана аяқталған және қорытындысы анық іс-әрекетті білдіреді.

Have you been crying? Your eyes are red.

He is dirty. He has been playing football.

Present Perfect Continuous жасалу жолы.

Present Perfect Continuous have been/has been көмекші етістіктері және негізгі етістікке **-ing** жалғауы жалғанады.

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	have been	digging	I You We They	have not been	digging
He She It	has been	digging	He She It	has not been	digging

Questions			Answers		
Have	I you we they	been digging?	Yes,	I you we they	have
	No,		have not		
Has	he she it	been digging?	Yes,	he she it	has
	No,		has not		

Present Perfect және Present Perfect Continuous айырмашылығы

▪ He has been typing letters all day .	▪ How many letters has he typed? ▪ He has typed ten letters today.
Бұл сөйлемде іс-әрекеттің қанша уақытқа дейін созылып жатқандығын көреміз.	Бұл сөйлемде іс-әрекеттің аяқталғандығы және іс-әрекеттің нәтижесі маңызды

THE PAST PERFECT

Had + Past Participle

1. A past action that occurred before another action in the past – бір іс-әрекеттің басқа өтіп кеткен іс-әрекеттен немесе сәттен бұрын басталғанын білдіреді.

*She **had just left** when I arrived there.*

*They **had already reserved** the table when they went to the restaurant.*

2. An action that was expected to occur in the past - өтіп кеткен іс-әрекеттің бір сәттен бұрын басталып, әлі де сол сәтте жалғасып жатқанын білдіреді.

*I **had hoped** to get their decision before.*

*He **had injured** his legs in a car accident.*

The Past Perfect Tense жасалу жолы

The Past Perfect Tense көмекші етістік **has + Past Participle** арқылы жасалады.

► Мезгіл пысықтауыштары:

For, since, till/until, by, by the time, never.

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	had	eaten	I You We They	had not	eaten
He She It	had	eaten	He She It	had not	eaten

Questions			Answers		
Had	I you we they	eaten?	Yes,	I you we they	had
			No,		had not
Had	he she it	eaten?	Yes,	he she it	had
			No,		had not

THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Had been + Present Participle

1. Expressing the duration of an activity that occurred before another action in the past year – өтіп кеткен іс-әрекеттің басқа өтіп кеткен іс-әрекеттің басталар кезіне дейін қаншалықты ұзақ болғанын көрсетеді.

*She **had been completing** for six years before she tried out for the Olympics last year.*

*They **had been skating** together for five years before they entered the competition.*

2. An action occurring recently before another action in the past - өткен шақтың ішінде екінші бір іс-әрекет басталғанға дейін болып өткен созылыңқылы өткен шақ.

*He looked tired because he **had been running** for six hours.*

*He **had been working hard** that day, so he was tired.*

The Past Perfect Tense жасалу жолы

The Past Perfect Tense **had been** көмекші етістігі және негізгі етістікке **-ing** жалғауы жалғану арқылы жасалады.

► Мезгіл пысықтауыштар:

For, since, until, before

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	had been	digging	I You We They	had not been	digging
He She It	had been	digging	He She It	had not been	digging

Questions			Answers		
Had	I you we they	been digging?	Yes,	I you we they	had
			No,		had not
Had	he she it	been digging?	Yes,	he she it	had
			No,		had not

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Fill the sentences with the following words.

already * before * ever * for * just * rarely * since * so * still * yet

1. Have you dreamt of winning the lottery?
2. I haven't worked out how to set the timer on the video.
3. My dad's lived in the same house he was born.
4. The film's only been on a couple of minutes.
5. Bruce has knocked three men out of the competition far.
6. I get the chance to get any exercise – I'm just too busy.
7. He's only got home.
8. It's eleven o'clock and Todd hasn't come home. Where could he be?
9. I've never met Ruth What's she like?
10. Have you finished? That was quick!

✎ 2. Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous?

1. It (snow) all day. I wonder when it will stop.
2. We (have) three major snowstorms so far this winter. I wonder how many more we will have.
3. It's ten p.m. I (study) I wonder how many more we will have.
4. I (write) them three times, but I still haven't received a reply.
5. The telephone (ring) four times in the last hour, and each time it has been for my office mate.
6. The telephone (ring) for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?
7. A.: (you, be) able to reach Bob on the phone yet?
B.: Not yet. I (try) for the last twenty minutes, but all I get is a busy signal.
8. A.: Hi, Jenny. I (see, not) you for weeks. What (you, do) lately?
B.: Studying.
9. A.: What are you going to order for dinner?
B.: Well, I (have, never) vegetarian pizza, so I think I'll order that.
10. A.: What's the matter? Your eyes are red and puffy. (you, cry)
B.: No, I just finished peeling some onions.

11. A.: Dr. Jones is a good teacher. How long (he, be) the university.

B.: He (teach) here for twenty-five years.

12. The little girl is dirty from head to foot because she (play)
... in the mud.

3. Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous?

1. Someone (eat) ... all the cakes. I'll have to buy some more.
2. What (you buy) ... your sister for her birthday?
3. My throat is really sore. I (sing) ... all evening.
4. Brenda (learn) Russian, but she finds it difficult.
5. How many people (you invite) to your party?
6. Those two for cats (sit) ... on that branch for the last party?
7. It (rain) ... all day! Why can't it stop?
8. Diana (wear) twelve different dresses in the park week!
9. I (do) ... everything you asked. What should I do now?
10. Graham and Pauline (try) ... to find a house for ages, but they can't find one they can afford.

4. Put the verbs in brackets into the proper present tense (Present Simple, Present Continuous or Present Perfect):

1. It is raining and Ann ... my umbrella. (to take)
2. The lesson ... yet. (not to begin)
3. I often ... people say that the weather in Astana is bad. (to hear)
4. Peter, what ... Bob ... there? (to do) – He ... his exercise-book, he ... it. (to look for, to lose) – Why it ... here! (to lie)
5. What ... he ... ? (to do) – He ... his degree-work, he ... it yet. (to write, not to finish). He ... necessary material for it, and now he ... in the library. (to collect, to work)
6. It's Sunday morning. On Sundays we usually ... to the country. (to go) I must be ready by nine o'clock as my friends are to call for me at 9 sharp. I ... already ... my bed and ... the floor. (to do, to sweep) Now I ... my hair: I ... and ... it, and I ... a scarlet band round my head. (to do, to brush, to comb, to put) Looking into the mirror I see that I ... pretty well with this new hairdo. (to look) I ... to the kitchen to have breakfast. (to go) My mother ... it for the two of us. (to cook) We ... at the kitchen-table. (to sit down) While Mother ... the coffee into our cups, I ... some sandwiches. (to pour, to prepare) "What ... your plans for today?" Mother asks me. (to be) "We haven't made up our minds yet." "I think you'd better go to some place near the sea," Mother says.

5. Open the brackets using the verbs in *the Present Perfect* or *Past Simple*.

1. He (to be) abroad five years ago.
2. You (to be) in the Caucasus last year?
3. They (to leave) England when he (to be) still a child.
4. He (not yet to come) back.
5. He (to go) already?
6. When you (to see) him last?
7. I (not to see) him for ages.
8. His health (to improve) greatly since I (to see) him last.
9. Last night I (to feel) tired and (to go) to bed very early.
10. Where you (to spend) your holidays?
11. You ever (to spend) your holidays in the Crimea?
12. While traveling in the Crimea I (to meet) your friend.
13. I never (to visit) that place.
14. He (to visit) that place last year.
15. I just (to get) a letter from Tom.
16. You (to take) any photographs while traveling in the south?

6. Open the brackets using the verbs in one of the future tenses: *Present Simple*, *Present Continuous*, *Present Perfect*, *Present Perfect Continuous*.

1. He (to run) now. He (to run) for ten minutes without any rest.
2. What they (to do) now? – They (to work) in the reading-room. They (to work) there for already three hours.
3. Where he (to be) now? – He (to be) in the garden. He (to play) volley-ball with his friends. They (to play) since breakfast time.
4. I (to live) in St.Petersburg. I (to live) in St.Petersburg since 1990.
5. She already (to do) her homework for two hours; but she (not yet to do) half of it.
6. I (to wait) for you since two o'clock.
7. What you (to do)? – I (to read) for already two hours. I already (to read) sixty pages.
8. This man (to be) a writer. He (to write) books. He (to write) books since he was a young man. He already (to write) eight books.
9. What you (to do) here since morning?
10. Lena is a very good girl. She always (to help) her mother about the house. Today she (to help) her mother since morning. They

already (to wash) the floor and (to dust) the furniture. Now they (to cook) dinner together.

11. This is the factory where my father (to work). He (to work) here for fifteen years.

12. You (to find) your note-book? – No! I still (to look) for it. I already (to look) for it for two hours, but (not yet to find) it.

13. You (to play) with a ball for already three hours. Go home and your homework.

14. Wake up! You (to sleep) for ten hours already.

15. I (to wait) for a letter from my cousin for a month already, but (not yet to receive) it.

16. It is difficult for me to speak about this opera as I (not to hear) it.

17. I just (to receive) a letter from my granny, but I (not yet to receive) any letters from my parents.

18. The weather (to be) fine today. The sun (to shine) ever since we got up.

19. Every day I (to wind) up my watch at 10 o'clock in the evening.

20. Come along, Henry, what you (to do) now? I (to wait) for you a long time.

21. Where your gloves (to be)? – I (to put) them into my pocket.

TESTYOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

She ... at the parcel long enough, before she ... that it was for her brother.

- a) had been looking, had understood
- b) had been looking, understood
- c) was looking, understood
- d) was looking, has understood
- e) was looked, has understood

2. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

We were good friends, we ... each other for years.

- a) had known
- b) had knowing
- c) were knowing
- d) know
- e) known

3. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. We for more than 24 hours.

- a) had travelled
- b) were travelling
- c) had been travelling
- d) travel
- e) have travelled

4. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

How long ... this book? How many pages of this book ... ?

- a) have you been reading, have you been reading
- b) have you read, have you read
- c) have you read, you read
- d) have you been reading, have you read
- e) have you reading, have read

5. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

We ... to the top of Holborn Hill before I ... that he was not smiling at all.

- a) had got, knew
- b) got, knew
- c) were getting, knew
- d) have got, have known
- e) are getting, knew

6. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. I am afraid (forget) my book at home.

- a) Have forgotten
- b) Has forgotten
- c) Have forgot
- d) Had forgotten
- e) Having forgotten

7. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. ...the secretary (yet/ come)?

- a) Had ... come yet?
- b) Has ... come yet?
- c) Have... come yet?
- d) Has will... come yet?
- e) Having ... come yet?

8. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. I (learn) the rhyme. Could you listen to me?

- a) Have learning/learnt
- b) Has learned/learnt
- c) Had learned/learnt
- d) Have learned/learnt
- e) Have learned/learning

9. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. ...you (ever/ be) to Italy?

- a) Had you ever been
- b) Have you ever been
- c) Have your ever been
- d) Having you ever been
- e) Has you ever been

10. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. They (already/ inform) me about the accident.

- a) Have had already informed
- b) Has already informed
- c) Having already informed
- d) Had already informed
- e) Have already informed

11. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. He is the most handsome man I (ever/ know).

- a) Have been ever known
- b) Have ever knew
- c) Have ever known
- d) Has ever known
- e) Had ever known

12. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Present Perfect.

Kevin (already/ leave for) Manchester.

- a) Has already leave for
- b) Have already left for
- c) Had already left for
- d) Has already left for
- e) Having already left for

13. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. He (not/ receive) any letters from her this week.

- a) Hasn't receive
- b) Haven't received
- c) Hasn't received
- d) Hadn't received
- e) Hasn't have received

14. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. I (not/ hear) from him since he left Paris.

- a) Haven't hear
- b) Haven't heard
- c) Haven't have heard
- d) Hasn't heard
- e) Hadn't heard

15. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. I (not/ see) Tom for ages.

- a) Haven't see
- b) Haven't seen
- c) Not seen
- d) Hasn't seen
- e) Hadn't see

16. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. ...you (have) a holiday this year?

- a) Have you had
- b) Has you had
- c) Had you had
- d) Have has you had
- e) Having you had

17. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. We (see) some good films recently.

- a) Had seen
- b) Has seen
- c) Have see
- d) Having seen
- e) Have seen

18. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. They (wait) for you for half an hour.

- a) Has waited
- b) Have waiting
- c) Had waited
- d) Have waited
- e) Have did waited

19. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. Mom (have) a headache since she came from the theater.

- a) Had had
- b) Have had
- c) Having had
- d) Has had
- e) Have, have

20. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. Alan (work) in the bank for a year.

- a) Had worked
- b) Has work
- c) Has working
- d) Have worked
- e) Has worked

21. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. Granny (be) ill for a fortnight.

- a) Been ill
- b) Has ill
- c) Have been ill
- d) Has been ill
- e) Has being ill

22. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Perfect. ...you (ever/ ride) a horse?

- a) Having you ever ridden
- b) Had you ever ridden
- c) Have has you ever ridden
- d) Have you ever ride
- e) Have you ever ridden

23. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Present Perfect/

Past Simple. We (not/ have) a holiday last year.

- a) Didn't have
- b) Haven't had
- c) Hadn't have
- d) Hasn't have
- e) Don't has

24. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Present Perfect/

Past Simple.

My parents (be) to the USA many times.

- a) Have been
- b) Were
- c) Have being
- d) Was
- e) Was being

25. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Present Perfect/

Past Simple.

I (buy) a new dress last week, but I (not/ wear) it yet.

- a) Bought, haven't worn
- b) Have bought, wore
- c) Had bough, didn't wear
- d) Had bough, don't wear
- e) Had buy, didn't wearing

UNIT VII

THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE

Will + infinitive (without 'to')

1. Predicting something that is likely to happen in the future –

Келешекте болатын іс-әрекеттер

You will win the race. I know it.

2. Expressing willingness to do something –

I will go with you if you like.

3. Making a decision at the time of speaking -

I will call you in a few minutes then.

Future Indefinite Tense I think немесе Perhaps сөздерімен қолданылады, сонымен қатар болашақта болатын іс-әрекетті көрсетеді.

I think it will rain tomorrow.

Perhaps she will be late for her lesson.

Future Indefinite Tense жасалу жолы

Present Indefinite Tense көмекші етістік **will** және етістіктің алғашқы нысаны **Infinitive** (to бөлшегінсіз) арқылы жасалады.

Future Indefinite Tense іс-әрекеттің асырылуын көрсетеді, дегенмен **to be going to** формасына қарағанда, іс-әрекеттің алдын-ала жоспарланғаны емес, кенеттен болғанын көрсетеді.

- The phone is ringing!

- I'll answer it.

► Мезгіл пысықтауыштары:

Tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week (month, year)

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	will	sing	I You We They	will not	sing
He She It	will	sing	He She It	will not	sing

Questions			Answers		
Will	I you	sing?	Yes,	I you	will

	we they		No,	we they	will not
Will	he she it	sing?	Yes,	he she	will
			No,	it	will not

Ағылшын тілінде келер шақтың басқа шақтарда көрінуі

Түрі	Қолданылатын кездері	Мысалдар
1. <i>to be going to</i> + инфинитив	Жақында іске асырылуы ойластырылып қойған іс-әрекет	She is going to visit his grandmother. They are going to play tomorrow.
2. Present Continuous (Progressive)	Жақында іске асырылуы ойластырылып қойған іс-әрекеттер, әдетте іс-қимыл етістіктермен (to come, to leave, to start, to arrive, to fly, etc.) жасалады.	I am leaving Almaty today. I am coming tomorrow. We are starting next week. George is arriving in the evening.
3. Present Simple (Indefinite)	Кестеге, графикке және бағдарламаға байланысты ойластырылып қойған іс-әрекет	The bus leaves at 6.30. The lesson begins in five minutes.
4. Модаль етістігі <i>to be to</i> + инфинитив	Келісім бойынша жақында орындалуы керек іс-әрекет	We are to go on Friday. Who is to clean the house today?

FUTURE CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE

1. An action that will continuing at a particular time in the future – Келешекте белгілі уақыт аралығында болатын іс-әрекет.

This time next week I will be training for the race.

This time next month we'll be lying on a beach or swimming in the sea.

The Future Continuous Tense жасалу жолы

The Future Continuous Tense көмекші етістік **will be** және етістіктің алғашқы нысаны **Infinitive** (to бөлшегінсіз) арқылы жасалады.

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	will be	be flying	I You We They	will not be	flying
He She It	will be	be flying	He She It	will not be	flying

Questions			Answers		
Will	I you we they	be flying?	Yes,	I you we they	will
			No,		will not
Will	he she it	be flying?	Yes,	he she it	will
			No,		will not

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

1. An action that will be completed before a particular time in the future – болашақта белгілі мезгілге дейін анық бітетін, орындалатын іс-әрекет

They will have finished their meeting by four o'clock this afternoon.

By next June I will have participated in four Olympics.

Future Perfect tense жасалу жолы

Future Perfect tense will have және етістіктің өткен шақтағы есімше Past Participle (Participle II) формасы арқылы жасалады.

► Мезгіл пысықтауыштар:

By that time, by then, by Sunday..., by the end of the year, by now.

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	will have	written	I You We They	will not have	written
He She It	will have	written	He She It	will not have	written

Questions			Answers		
Will	I you we they	have written?	Yes,	I you we they	will
			No,		will not
Will	he she it	have written?	Yes,	he she it	will
			No,		will not

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

1. Expressing the duration of time that has occurred before a specific time in the future – Келер шақтағы белгілі бір уақытқа дейінгі созыңқылы уақытты білдіреді

By the next May I will have been training at this gym for eleven years.

Future Perfect Continuous tense жасалу жолы

Future Perfect Continuous tense көмекші етістік **will have been** және негізгі етістікке **-ing** жалғауы жалғану арқылы жасалады.

Positive			Negative		
I You We They	will have been	walking	I You We They	will not have been	walking
He She It	will have been	walking	He She It	will not have been	walking

Questions			Answers		
Will	I you we they	have been walking?	Yes,	I you we they	will
			No,		will not
Will	he she it	have been walking?	Yes,	he she it	will
			No,		will not

FUTURE IN THE PAST

► The Future in the Past - өткен шақта болу керек іс-әрекетті келер шақта білдіреді.

Last time I saw you, we were going to start a new job.

► The Future in the Past жасалу жолы
The Future in the Past көмекші етістіктер өткен шақтың формасында қолданылады.

is going to → *was / were going to*

will → *would*

In 1968 I arrived in the town where I would spend the next 10 years of my life.

He knew she would return the following week.

“To be going to” обороты

► “To be going to” обороты келер шақтағы іс-әрекетті білдіреді. Future Simple-дан “to be going to” оборотының айырмашылығы:

1. Алдын-ала жоспарланған іс-қимыл

I'm going to watch the next programme.

Rachel and Vicky are going to spend two weeks in Hawaii.

2. Нақты іс-әрекетті білдіреді.

My sister is going to have a baby next month.

Do you think it is going to rain?

This bag isn't very strong. It's going to break.

► “To be going to” обороты әдетте **to go** етістігімен қолданылмайды. Оның орнына **Present Continuous** қолданылады:

We are going to go out this evening. (= We are going out this evening)

► “To be going to” жасалу жолы

“To be going to”: to be + going to + infinitive

Positive			Negative		
I	am going to	post	I	am not going to	post
You We They	are going to	post	You We They	are not going to	post
He She It	is going to	post	He She It	is not going to	walking

Questions			Answers		
Am	I	going to post?	Yes,	I	am
			No,		am not
Are	you we they	going to post?	Yes,	you we they	are
			No,		are not
Is	he she it	going to post?	Yes,	he she it	is
			No,		is not

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Put the verb in brackets into the Future Continuous or Future Perfect:

1. Don't phone between 7 and 8. ... (we / have) dinner then.
2. Phone me after 8 o'clock ... (we/finish) by then.
3. Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, (we/play) tennis.
4. A.: Can we meet tomorrow?
B.: Yes, but not in the afternoon. (I/work).
5. Ben has to go to a meeting which begins at 10 o'clock. It will last about an hour.
A.: Will, you be free at 11.30?
B.: Yes, ... (the meeting/end) by then.
6. Ben is on holiday and he is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, (he/spend) all his money before the end of his holiday.
7. Do you think ... (you/still/do) the same job in ten year's time?
8. Lisa is from New Zealand. She is travelling around Europe at the moment. So far she has travelled about 1.000 miles. By the end of the trip, (she/travel) more than 3.000 miles.
9. If you need to contact me, ... (I/stay) at the Lion Hotel until Friday.
10. We're late. The film ... (already/start) by the time we get to the cinema.

✎ 2. Put the following sentences into Present Continuous:

1. Right now I am attending class. Yesterday at this time, I was attending class. Tomorrow at this time, I (attend) _____ class.
Tomorrow at this time, I (attend) _____ class.
2. Tomorrow I'm going to leave for home. When I (arrive) _____ at the airport, my whole family (wait) _____ for me.
3. A.: How can I get in touch with you while you're out of town?
B.: I (stay) _____ at the Pilgrim Hotel. You can reach me there.
4. Next year at this time, I (do) _____ exactly what I am doing now. I (attend) _____ school and (study) _____ hard next year.
5. A.: When do you leave for Florida?
B.: Tomorrow. Just think! Two days from now I (lie) _____ on the beach in the sun.
A.: Sounds great! I (think) _____ about you.

✎ **3. Ask questions to the following sentences beginning “How long ...?”. Use the words in brackets in *Present Perfect* or *Present Perfect Continuous*.**

1. It's our wedding anniversary today. (be married)
2. Did you know that Renata wore contacts lenses? (wear, them)
3. Where were you? It's ten past seven. (be, here)
4. Maxim and I are getting married next month. (know, him).
5. They live in London now. (live, there)
6. The job is very easy for me now. (work, here)
7. The children are in the garden. (be outside)
8. The boys are playing football. (they, do)
9. Richard is on a business trip. (be, away)

✎ **4. Open the brackets, using *will* or *be going to*.**

We have learned this week that the local council has plans for Westside Park in Brickfield. The council ... is going to **(sell)** the land to a builder, Forbes and Son. The plans are all ready. (1) ... **(we/build)** fifty houses, said Mr. Forbes. In two years time everything (2) ... (be) finished. I'm sure people (3) ... **(like)** the houses. Most of them (4) ... **(be)** for young families. And we intend to take care of the environment. (5) ... **(we/not/cut)** all the trees, only a few of them. But people living near the park are angry. This is a terrible idea. We're all against it.' said Mrs. Mary Brent. '(6) ... **(we/have)** a protest march on Saturday. I expect everyone in Brickfield (7) ... (be) there. We've reached our decision. (8) **(we/stop)** this plan.

✎ **5. Choose the right variant:**

1. Why are you going **to buy** / **will you buy** a new mountain bike?
2. Don't phone between 8.00 and 9.00. I'll **study** / **I'll be studying** then.
3. Look out! That tree **will** / **is going to** fall!
4. Let me know as soon as Louise **will get** / **gets** there.
5. Great news! Jean Chris **will come** / **are coming** to stay with us.
6. According to this timetable, the bus is going **to arrive** / **arrives** at 6.00.
7. Can you call me at 7.00, because **I'll leave** / **I'm leaving** tomorrow?
8. If you arrive late at the sale, the best things **will go** / **will have gone**.

✎ 6. Open the brackets using the verbs in *the Present Perfect* or *Past Simple*.

1. He (to be) abroad five years ago.
2. You (to be) in the Caucasus last year?
3. They (to leave) England when he (to be) still a child.
4. He (not yet to come) back.
5. He (to go) already?
6. When you (to see) him last?
7. I (not to see) him for ages.
8. His health (to improve) greatly since I (to see) him last.
9. Last night I (to feel) tired and (to go) to bed very early.
10. Where you (to spend) your holidays?
11. You ever (to spend) your holidays in the Crimea?
12. While traveling in the Crimea I (to meet) your friend.
13. I never (to visit) that place.
14. He (to visit) that place last year.
15. I just (to get) a letter from Tom.
16. You (to take) any photographs while traveling in the south?

✎ 7. Use the right forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. She went up to her bedroom on the second floor, and she (feel) so tired, that she (fall) asleep. Soon after she (lie) down. She (have) a long and difficult day.

2. Mrs. Foster paid the driver and (ring) the bell. She (wait) but there (be) no answer. Everybody (leave) for the party.

3. He moved across the room to the box. He (pick) up a piece of paper that (lie) besides the box, (study) it carefully, (put) it down, (look) in the box, and then again at the paper. He (do) this for perhaps half an hour. He (know) who (write) the paper.

4. Mary took his coat and (hang) it in the hall. They not (meet) for quite a long time. Then she (make) the drinks, the way he (teach) her, and soon he (tell) her the news which she not (hear) yet.

5. Every day she took her grandchildren for walks. They (be) so beautiful! She (feed) them cakes, and (buy) them presents, and (tell) them charming stories. Those walks (become) a tradition with them.

TESTYOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant:

I _____ start a new life tomorrow.

- a) to be going
- b) am going
- c) shall go
- d) is going
- e) were going

2. Choose the right variant:

Mark _____ into the army next year.

- a) was going
- b) will go
- b) goes
- d) would go
- e) will be go

3. Choose the right variant:

They _____ dinner at this time tomorrow.

- a) have
- b) are having
- c) will have
- d) having had
- e) will be having

4. Choose the right variant:

– What’s happened to your hair?

Your mother _____ .

- a) didn’t like
- b) liked
- c) liked
- d) would like
- e) won’t like

5. Choose the right variant:

Who _____ for a walk tomorrow?

- a) go
- b) will go
- c) didn’t go
- d) doesn’t go
- e) went

6. Choose the right variant:

They _____ their English exam at this time tomorrow.

- a) will take
- b) will be talking
- c) would take
- d) is taking
- e) take

7. Choose the right variant:

My boss _____ some VIP’s tomorrow.

- a) will be received
- b) is receiving
- c) will have received
- d) receive
- e) has received

8. Choose the right variant:

Ask him when the engineers _____ finish the talks.

- a) will
- b) would
- c) had
- d) have
- e) do

9. Choose the right variant:

This time tomorrow we _____ probably _____ fishing.

- a) are / will
- b) - / shall
- c) shall / be
- d) shall / -
- e) do / are

10. Choose the right variant:

What _____ you _____ at 6 tomorrow?

- a) will / do
- b) was / doing
- c) will / be doing
- d) is / doing
- e) will / have done

11. Find the right variant

I _____ for ten minutes before the police came.

- a) Is waiting
- b) Am waiting
- c) Will be waiting
- d) Was waiting
- e) Had been waiting

12. Choose the right variant:

I ... the radio for 10 minutes before the car turned over.

- a) Played
- b) Is playing
- c) Was playing
- d) Had been playing
- e) Has been playing

13. Choose: Present Perfect Continuous:

- a) I have ever been in London.
- b) I've been talking to Tom about your problem.
- c) Jim has gone to Canada.
- d) Don't forget to post that letter.
- e) He has already started his work

14. It ... since early morning.

- a) Raining
- b) Rained
- c) Had rained
- d) Has been raining
- e) Have been raining

15. You are a good football-player.

Since when ... you ... football?

- a) Has ... been playing
- b) Have ... been playing
- c) Did ... play
- d) Had... been playing
- e) Have ... been played

16. My brother ... music lessons for three years now.
- a) Have taking
b) Have taken
c) Has been taking
- d) Took
e) Had
17. My friend ... on the ship for fifteen years by next year.
- a) Is served
b) Will have been serving
c) Have served
- d) Was serving
e) Had served
18. ... they ... in the mountains for a month by July?
- a) Will ... travel
b) Shall ... travel
c) Will ... have been traveling
- d) Will ... be travelling
e) Shall ... be travelling
19. By two o'clock the students will ... the test translation for two hours.
- a) Be
b) Be doing
c) Have been doing
- d) Has been
e) Do
20. The war broke out in 1914. The European ruling classes ... for it for twenty years.
- a) Preparing
b) Prepared
c) Has prepared
- d) Had been prepared
e) Had been preparing
21. The European experts ... long ... that the arms race would lead to war.
- a) Was ... warning
b) Were ... warning
c) Had ... been warning
- d) Would ... be warning
e) Will ... warning
22. It was pointed out that the patient ... treatment for heart problems for a year.
- a) Has
b) Had been having
c) Had
- d) Would have been having
e) Will have been
23. It was reported that a plane from the air field ... since the previous morning.
- a) Missing
b) Was missing
c) Had been missing
- d) Has been missing
e) Have been missed

24. _____ English since last December.

- a) Would be learning
- b) Will be learning
- c) Am learning
- d) Have been learning
- e) Learn

25. I am very tired. I _____ for three days.

- a) Travelling
- b) Travel
- c) Travelled
- d) Had travelled
- e) Have been travelling

UNIT VIII

MODAL VERBS

Ағылшын тілінде көп қолданылатын модальды етістіктер: **can = be able to, had better, may, must = have to, ought to, should, will, would, need.** Олар істің істелуіндегі мүмкіндікті, істей алушылықты, ықтималдықты және қажеттілікті көрсетеді.

► **Модальдың етістіктердің ерекшеліктері:**

“s” жалғауын жалғамайды.

She must study. (Right sentence: She musts study).

CAN (COULD)

Қолданылуы	Мысалдар
1. Қабілет	<p><i>I can play the piano.</i> <i>He can finish his work next week</i></p>
2. Өтініш және рұқсат сұрау	<p><i>Could you help me with my English home work please?</i> <i>Could I borrow your calculator?</i> <i>Can I use your pen?</i></p>
3. Мүмкінділік Ықтималдылық	<p><i>You could win a million pounds!</i></p>
4. Күмән, сенімсіздік	<p><i>They can't be strangers.</i> <i>Can it be 10 o'clock already? – It can't be 10 o'clock.</i></p>
5. Кінә тағу	<p><i>He could have invited us.</i> <i>You could be more polite.</i></p>
<p>‘Could’ етістігі етістіктің негізгі формасымен (Infinitive) байланысып, істің өткен шақта істелу мүмкіндігін көрсетеді. Ағылшын тілінде ‘could’ деген етістік сөйлемде өткен шақты көрсетеді және істей алды, білді деп аударылады.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>He could ski very well when he was very young</i></p>	

MAY (MIGHT)

Қолданылуы	Мысалдар
<p>1. Мүмкінділік Ықтималдылық</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>One day all your dreams may come true. It may rain later. The lights are still on. Aigul may have forgotten to turn them off.</i></p>
<p>2. Өтініш және рұқсат сұрау</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>May I see the letter? – Yes, you may. May I take your photo? – No, you may not.</i></p>
<p>3. Болжам</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>It may be true, but we are not sure. They may have done the work.</i></p>
<p>4. Кеңес (might модальді етістігімен қолданылады).</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>You might wait for me! There is a lot of time. He might have warned us about it. Now it's too late.</i></p>

MUST

Қолданылуы	Мысалдар
1. Міндеттілік қажеттілік	<p><i>Car drivers must drive slowly in towns.</i> <i>I must find a hotel to stay at tonight.</i></p>
2. Тыйым салу	<p><i>You must not tell anyone what I said.</i> <i>You mustn't park here.</i> <i>You mustn't play on the railway track.</i></p>
3. Мүмкіндік	<p><i>He must know his address.</i> <i>Where is he? – He must be walking in the garden.</i></p>

HAVE TO модальді етістігі

Қолданылуы	Мысалдар
Істелінетін істің қажеттілігін міндеттілігін көрсету үшін	<p><i>In England you have to drive on the left.</i></p> <p><i>I had to take the pills three times a day for two weeks.</i></p>
<p>Remember!</p> <p>Have to модальді етістігі болымсыз және сұраулы сөйлемдерде Do/does, did, shall/will көмекші етістіктермен қолданылады</p> <p><i>Do you have to do shopping every weekend? – I don't have to do shopping every weekend.</i></p> <p><i>Did she have to walk to her school yesterday? – She didn't have to walk to school.</i></p> <p><i>Will they have to speak at the meeting? – They won't have to speak at the meeting.</i></p>	

BE TO модальді етістігі

Қолданылуы	Мысалдар
1. Міндет (келісім, жоспар бойынша)	<p><i>The director was to sign the contract. – Директор келісім шартқа қол қою керек еді.</i></p>
2. Бұйрық, тыйым салу	<p><i>You are to report to the teacher.</i></p> <p><i>You are not to come here! (Сіз бұл жерге келмеуіңіз керек).</i></p>
3. Шарасыздық	<p><i>It was to happen</i></p>

SHOULD, OUGHT TO, HAD BETTER модальді етістігі

<p>should + infinitive (to демеулігінсіз)</p>	<p>ought to + infinitive</p>
<p>You should help him. He shouldn't be so shy.</p>	<p><i>You ought to do your best.</i> <i>She ought to help her parents.</i></p>
<p>Қолданылуы</p>	<p>Мысалдар</p>
<p>1. Кеңес беру, өзіндік пікір айту, (басқа адамдардың алдындағы борыш) (бұл мағынада <i>should</i> модальді етістігі <i>ought to</i> етістігіне қарағанда көбірек қолданылады).</p>	<p><i>You should be friendly to people</i> <i>You ought to / should revise for you test.</i></p>
<p>2. Кінә тағу, рұсқау беру</p>	<p><i>He ought to help his parents.</i> <i>They should consult a doctor.</i></p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Past form - өткен шақта</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Should have + Past Participle</p> <p><i>I'm feeling sick. I shouldn't have eaten so much chocolate. (= I ate too much chocolate)</i></p> <p>Suggest, propose, recommend, insist, demand етістіктерінен кейін should модальді етістігі қолданылады.</p> <p>a) <i>My parents insisted that we should have dinner with them.</i> b) <i>I demanded that he should apologize.</i> c) <i>What do you suggest I should do?</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Had better</p> <p>Белгілі бір ситуацияға қатысты қолданылады. Егер ережеге немесе құралға бағынбаса, нәтижесі жаман болатындығы көрінеді.</p> <p>a) <i>The neighbours are complaining.</i> <i>We'd better turn the music down.</i> b) <i>The film starts at 8 o'clock. You'd better go now or you'll be late.</i></p>	

EXERCISES

✎ **1. Answer the following questions using mayn't, mustn't, needn't.**

1. Must I do the room? – No, you It is clean. 2. Mother, may I play with matches? – No, you 3. Must we go there at once? – No, you 4. Shall I meet you at the University after the evening classes? – No, you Peter promised to see me home. 5. May I take your bicycle for a run in the country? – No, you ..., because it is out of order. 6. Must I go through this text now? – No, you ... , you can do it tomorrow.

✎ **2. Complete the sentences with the words in the brackets.**

1. Don't phone Ann now. (she might / have / lunch)
... She might be having lunch....
2. I ate too much. Now I feel sick. (I shouldn't / eat / so much). ...
... ..
3. I wonder why Tom didn't phone me. (he must / forget)
...
4. Why did you go home so early? (you needn't / go / home so early)
5. You've signed the contract, (it / can't / change / now)
6. "What's Linda doing?" "I'm not sure." (she may / watch / television)
7. Ann was standing outside the cinema, (she must / wait / for somebody)
8. He was in prison at the time the crime was committed, so (he couldn't / do / it).
9. Why weren't you here earlier? (you ought / be / here earlier)
.....
10. Why didn't you ask me to help you? (I would / help / you) ...
.....
11. I'm surprised nobody told you that the road was very dangerous, (you should / warn)
12. George was in a strange mood yesterday. (he might not / feel / very well)

3. Fill the following sentences with modal verbs: must, have to, need.

1. Oh, I ... remember to get some potatoes on the way home tonight.
2. Jason see the headmaster during the next break. I wonder what it's about?
3. We ... light lot of candles during the power cut two nights ago.
4. I'll start doing my Christmas cards soon. It's nearly December.
5. Carl, you ... run into the street like that without looking first. it's dangerous!
6. People with solar-powered cars worry about the price of petrol.
7. I wouldn't like to ... get up five o'clock every morning.
8. We ... do any washing-up after the picnic because we'd used disposable plate and cutlery.
9. Do professional musicians ... practice every day?
10. I ... have bothered cooking all that food, they'd eaters before they arrived.

4. Choose the right variant.

1. There's someone at the door. It *can/must* be the postman.
2. Don't worry, you *don't have / mustn't* pay now.
3. I think you *had better / would better* take a pullover with you.
4. Jones *could / must* be president if Smith has to resign.
5. Sorry. I can't stay any longer. I *have to / might* go.
6. It was 5 o'clock an hour ago. Your watch *can't / mustn't* be right.
7. It's a school rule⁶ all the pupils *have to / must* wear a uniform.
8. I suppose that our team must / should win, but I'm not sure.
9. Let's tell Diana. She *could / might* not know.
10. In my opinion, the government, *might / should* do something about this.

5. Insert appropriate modal verbs and give reasons for your choice:

1. You ... hardly find a grown-up person or a youngster who is not enthusiastic about sport.
2. She will hardly ... go there again.
3. Every school ... have good sports facilities.
4. I think it ... rain today.
5. How ... he say such things about me!
6. ... I come to see you

next Saturday? 7. We ... have a five minutes' interval now because I am tired. 8. Mother thinks he ... come tonight. 9. He ... be more careful. 10. ... carry your bag for you? 11. ... we get up early to meet him? 12. ... I ask you to close the window? 13. You ... eat less bread and potatoes not to be fat. 14. She ... know her because she is also a member of a Dynamo team. 15. No one ... ask him about the accident. 16. We ... all work hard so that our country ... be prosperous.

TEST YOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant:

Why didn't you help him? You _____ have done it.

- a) must
- b) can
- c) could
- d) were to
- e) was able to

2. Choose the right variant:

But I _____ stay in England for six month, and not for a fortnight as I had planned.

- a) had to
- b) can
- c) can
- d) shall have
- e) am able to

3. Choose the right variant:

Last week I _____ go to town on business trip as the Ministry of Education had asked me to come.

- a) had to
- b) might
- c) should
- d) could
- e) was able to

4. Choose the right variant:

If one person is careless with a library book, then it _____ be read others.

- a) can't
- b) couldn't
- c) may
- d) can
- e) mightn't

5. Choose the right variant:

People who knows a foreign language _____ learn a second one easily.

- a) may
- b) had to
- c) have to
- d) must
- e) am able to

6. Choose the right variant:

_____ I have a word with you, please?

- a) may
- b) had to
- c) have to
- d) must
- e) am able to

7. Choose the right variant:

At first I _____ skate well, I _____ .

- a) couldn't / can
- b) mustn't / can
- c) must / needn't
- d) may / can
- e) should / shouldn't

8. Choose the right variant:

She said they ____ go to the cinema if they liked.

- a) must
- b) may
- c) can
- d) had to
- e) could

9. Choose the right variant:

I didn't want to go there but I _____ .

- a) must
- b) might
- c) shall
- d) can't
- e) had to

10. Choose the right variant:

1. You ... take care of your parents.

- a) Will
- b) Shall
- c) Ought to
- d) Are to
- e) May

11. My sight is getting worse. Next year, I'm afraid, I ... read without glasses.

- a) Ought
- b) Can not
- c) May not
- d) Won't be able to
- e) Mustn't

12. Don't you see I'm tired? You ... me, you know.

- a) Might have ... helped
- b) Could... help
- c) May ... help
- d) Must
- e) May

13. Police, firefighters, newspapers reporters and radio broadcasters ... work on holiday in the USA.

- a) Can
- b) Could
- c) Might
- d) Must
- e) Have to

14. The real history of the period between 1688 and the middle of the eighteenth century summed up in three words.

- a) Need be
- b) Will be able to be
- c) Can be
- d) Has to be
- e) Have to be

15. No museums ... ever ... buy one painting by this artist.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) Has ... been able to | d) Has ... been allowed to |
| b) Have ... been able to | e) Must ... have |
| c) Might ... have | |

16. Choose the correct answer:

Since we have to be there before 9 o'clock, we ... take a taxi. Otherwise, we'll be late.

- | | |
|---------|----------------|
| a) Must | d) Are able to |
| b) May | e) Had better |
| c) Can | |

17. Choose the right variant:

You ... take any book you like

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| a) May | d) Should |
| b) Must | e) Can |
| c) Have to | |

18. Choose the right variant:

Nobody is making you do this. You ... go to the party if you don't want to.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| a) Is not able to | d) Couldn't |
| b) Are not able to | e) Needn't |
| c) Can't | |

19. Choose the correct answer:

... you pass me the salt, please?

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| a) Should | d) Had to |
| b) Must | e) Can |
| c) May | |

20. Choose the right variant:

My grandfather was a very clever man. He ... speak five languages.

- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| a) Ought | d) Is able to |
| b) Can | e) Might |
| c) Could | |

21. Choose the right variant:

He lived in England for some time but he ... speak English.

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| a) Mustn't | d) Has to |
| b) Can't | e) Ought |
| c) May | |

22. Choose the right answer:

I'm afraid you will ... wait for a long time.

- a) Ought
- b) Must
- c) May
- d) Can
- e) Have to

23. Complete the sentence:

Like any top sportsman she _____ to train very hard.

- a) May
- b) Can
- c) Should
- d) Must
- e) Has

24. Choose the correct answer.

We ... do our lessons everyday.

- a) Must
- b) Could
- c) Will have to
- d) Might
- e) Had to

25. Choose the right variant:

We had an appointment yesterday afternoon but he _____ see me.

- a) might not
- b) mustn't
- c) cannot
- d) have to
- e) wasn't able to

UNIT IX

VOICE - ETIC

Ағылшын тілінде екі етіс бар: өздік етіс (Active Voice) және ырықсыз етіс (Passive Voice). Егер бастауыш іс-әрекетте жасаушы қызметін атқаратын болса, онда етістік *өздік etic* түрінде қолданылады.

Егер бастауыш басқа біреудің немесе нәрсенің тарапынан іске асырылып жатса, етістік *ырықсыз etic* түрінде қолданылады.

Rolls Royce cars are made in England

Ырықсыз етіс біреудің немесе заттың басқа біреумен немесе заттың тарапынан әсер етіліп жатқанын білдіру үшін қолданылады. Сонымен қатар ырықсыз етіс іс-әрекеттің өзі маңызды екенін көрсетеді.

Сөйлемді ырықсыз етіске айналдыру үшін сөйлемде толықтауыш болу керк.

Active:

Subject	verb	object
My grandfather	built	this house

Passive:

Subject	verb	object
This house	was built	by my grandmother

Ырықсыз етіс шақтары өздік етіс шақтарының ережелеріне сәйкес өзгертіледі.

Voice	Active	Passive
Present Simple	She writes the reports.	Am/is/are+Past Participle (3 rd form of the verb) The reports are written.
Present Continuous	She is writing the reports	Am/is/are+ing+past Participle The reports are being written .
Past Simple	She wrote the reports.	Was/were + Past Participle The reports were written .
Past Continuous	She was writing the reports.	Was/were +ing+ Past Participle

		The reports were being written.
Present Perfect	She has written the reports.	Have/has + been + past participle The reports had been written.
Past Perfect	She had written the reports.	Had + been + Past Participle The reports had been written.
Future Simple	She will write the reports.	Will+be+ Past Participle The reports will be written.
Future Perfect Simple	She will have written the reports.	Will+have+been+ Past Participle The reports will have been written.
Modal verbs	She may write the reports. She should have written the reports.	Modal verbs + be + Past Participle The reports may be written. The reports should have been written.
Be going to	She is going to write the reports.	Is/are going to+be+ Past Participle The reports are going to be written.

Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous, Future Continuous, Future Perfect Continuous шақтары ырықсыз етісте (пассивте) қолданылмайды.

Wrong sentence: The restaurant has been being built for 4 years.

Right sentence: The restaurant has been under construction for 4 years.

Active: A friend gave **my sister** this cookery book.

Passive: My sister **was given** this cookery book by a friend.
This cookery book **was given** to my sister by a friend.

“Have something done” конструкциясы

“Have something done” конструкциясында іс-әрекет айтушыға қатысты, бірақ ол іс-әрекетті өзі емес басқа адамның тарапынан жасалғандығы көрсетіледі.

Have + object + Past Participle

Aibek	has	the roof	repaired
We	are having	the house	painted
Where	did you have	your hair	cut?
Nurlan	has	his suits	cleaned?

► It + passive verb + clause

Сөйлеушінің кім екенін керек етпеген жағдайда осы конструкцияны қолданады.

Nurzhan works very hard.

It is said that he works 16 hours a day = **He is said to work** 16 hours a day.

The police are looking for a missing boy.

It is believed that the boy is wearing a black pullover and blue jeans.

The boy is **believed to be wearing** a black pullover and blue jeans.

► Ырықсыз етісте қолданылмайтын етістіктер.

Кейбір етістіктер ырықсыз етісте қолданылмайды. Оларға: - **die, arrive, fit, have, lack, suit, resemble, agree** және басқалар жатады.

For example:

They have a nice house. (But not: A nice house is had them).

My shoes don't fit me. (But not: I'm not fitted by my shoes).

Everybody agreed with me. (But not: I was agreed by everybody.)

EXERCISES

✎ **1. Practice in using the Passive Voice. Change the following statements into their passive equivalents.**

1. Somebody cleans the room every day. The room _____ .
2. People cancelled all fights because of fog. All _____ .
3. Somebody accused me of stealing money. I _____ .
4. People don't use this road much. _____ .
5. How do people learn language? How _____ .
6. Somebody has cleaned the room. _____ .
7. They have postponed the meeting. _____ .
8. I didn't realize that somebody was recording our conversation.
I didn't realize that _____ .
9. When we got to the stadium, we found that they had cancelled the game. We found that _____ .
10. They are building a new ring road round the city. A new ring road _____ .

✎ **2. Practice in using the Passive Voice. Change the following statements into their passive equivalents.**

Example 1. They know Tokyo is a huge city.

It is known that Tokyo is a huge city.

1. They believe doctors are always ready to help people who are ill.
2. Everyone expects the new discovery will bring positive results.
3. People say that New York was discovered by an Italian navigators.
4. They say that according to Russian tradition honored guests are welcomed with bread and salt.

Example 2. They offered me a cup of tea.

I was offered a cup of tea.

A cup of tea was offered to me.

1. They gave me a form to fill in.
2. They granted me a visa.
3. We'll offer him by all means.
4. He has just told us a very amusing story.

3. Put the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

a) 1. They often invite me to their parties. 2. People speak English in different parts of the world. 3. One uses milk for making butter. 4. We form the Passive Voice with the help of the auxiliary verb "to be". 5. They build a lot of new houses in this district every year.

b) 1. They built this house in 1950. 2. Somebody locked the front door. 3. Someone broke my pen last night. 4. They punished the boy for that. 5. They finished their work in time.

c) 1. People will forget it very soon. 2. They will translate this book next year. 3. They will tell you when to come. 4. Where will they build a new library? 5. Someone will ask about it.

4. Put the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

Model: They laughed at him.

He was laughed at.

1. People speak much of him. 2. They will look after the children well. 3. People will laugh at you if say it. 4. They sent for the doctor immediately. 5. Everybody listened to her attentively. 6. They always wait for me after the lessons. 7. Nobody took notice of this little boy. 8. Everybody lost sight of the boat in the fog. 9. Why are they laughing at her? 10. I wonder whether they will listen to him. 11. Students often refer to these books. 12. Nobody has ever spoken to me in such a way. 13. If they send for you don't refuse to come. 14. They have not referred to that incident since then.

5. Put the given words in the Passive Voice, making necessary changes.

1. She took a long time to write the composition, but at last she wrote it.

2. Don't put the cup there: somebody will break it.

3. Why weren't you at the birthday party? - They didn't invite me.

4. We met many difficulties, but all the same we finished the work in time.

5. We shall leave you behind if you are not quick.

6. I spent all my money on books last month.

7. I don't think we shall do all this work today: there is too much of it.

8. It's a very funny thing that when I start doing this, somebody always stops me.

9. Don't leave these sweets on the table: somebody will eat them.

10. The elephant broke the branch of the tree.

11. The bees attacked the bear when it tried to take their honey.

TEST YOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

The Remembrance Day and the Veteran's Day _____ on the 11th of November every year.

- a) celebrated
- b) are celebrated
- c) will be celebrated
- d) was celebrated
- e) is celebrated

2. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

I hope that the truth _____ very soon.

- a) will find out
- b) will be finding out
- c) is found out
- d) will be found out
- e) shall find out

3. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Everything _____ before you came.

- a) is done
- b) was done
- c) has done
- d) had been done
- e) has been done

4. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

People go to the tomb of the Unknown Soldier to stand in silence for a minute to honor the memory of those who _____ is wars.

- a) is killed
- b) will be killed
- c) was killed
- d) are killed
- e) were killed

5. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

The sports competitions which _____ on Sunday _____ by a lot of people.

- a) are held / will be held
- b) was held / will visit
- c) will held / will visit
- d) have been held / have visited
- e) will be held / will be visited

6. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

The inspector is not in the town. He _____ to another place some days ago.

- a) was sent
- b) sent
- c) will be sent
- d) will send
- e) sends

7. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Business letters _____ usually on special forms.

- a) will be written
- b) are written
- c) are being written
- d) is written
- e) write

8. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Sometimes a lot of guests _____ to his birthday party.

- a) had invited
- b) was invited
- c) were inviting
- d) are invited
- e) is inviting

9. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Houses _____ very quickly now.

- a) builds
- b) are building
- c) built
- d) are built
- e) were built

10. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Many modern apartments _____ in Berlin since 1980.

- a) are built
- b) are building
- c) were built
- d) have been built
- e) has been built

11. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple Passive or Past Simple Passive? The room (clean) every day.

- a) Was cleaned
- b) Is cleaned
- c) Was clean
- d) Were cleaned
- e) Cleaned

12. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple Passive or Past Simple Passive?

... my suit (clean) yesterday?

- a) Is ... clean
- b) Are ... cleaned
- c) Is ... cleaned
- d) Was ... cleaned
- e) Were ... cleaning

13. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple Passive or Past Simple Passive?

This house (build) in the XVII th century.

- a) Were built
- b) Is build
- c) Was built
- d) Is built
- e) Is building

14. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

Present Simple Passive or Past Simple Passive? Every year the seas (poison) on our planet.

- a) Was poisoned
- b) Is poison
- c) Are poisoned.
- d) Were poisoning
- e) Were poisoned

15. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Present Simple Passive or Past Simple Passive?

The road (not/use) by the company last year.

- a) Isn't used
- b) Aren't used
- c) Wasn't used
- d) Not used
- e) Shan't used

16. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Active or Passive? Somebody (ask) me on the phone every evening.

- a) Is asked
- b) Asked
- c) Asks
- d) Will asked
- e) Is asking

17. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Active or Passive? Who (use) my new car at the moment?

- a) Is being use
- b) Are being used
- c) Is using
- d) Is being used
- e) Being used

18. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Active or Passive? I (ask) many questions by my friends after the lesson.

- a) Will asked
- b) Will ask
- c) Ask
- d) Will asking
- e) Will be asked

19. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Active or Passive? The children (take) to the museums next week.

- a) Will taken
- b) Will take
- c) Take
- d) Will taking
- e) Will be taken

20. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Active or Passive? The man (ask) what language I was speaking.

- a) Was asked
- b) Asked
- c) Were asked
- d) Was ask
- e) Was asking

21. Choose the right variant of the main verb. Active or Passive?
I think he (find) the address already.

- A) Has found
- B) Has been found
- C) Has being found
- D) Has been find
- E) Being found

22. Choose the right variant of the main verb.
Nobody likes _____ for at night.

- a) be sent
- b) is sent
- c) was sent
- d) to be sent
- e) sent

23. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

The new film _____ in all the big theaters of the city.

- a) is demonstrated
- b) was being demonstrated
- c) is being demonstrated
- d) would be demonstrated
- e) had been demonstrated

24. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

You can't use this textbook now. It _____ by your friend.

- a) takes
- b) has been taken
- c) took
- d) were taken
- e) had taken

25. Choose the right variant of the main verb.

– Did the company test the equipment yesterday?

- Yes it _____ .

- a) has tested
- b) had been tested
- c) had tested
- d) was tested
- e) tested

UNIT X

DIRECT AND INDIRECT ‘REPORTED’ SPEECH

ТӨЛ СӨЗ БЕН ТӨЛЕУ СӨЗ

Төл сөзді төлеу сөзге өзгерткенде шақтардың қиысу ережесін есте сақтау керек, яғни өткен шақтағы түрлері ғана болады.

Төл сөзді төлеу сөзге айналдыру жолдары

Direct Speech	Indirect “Reported” Speech	Examples
Present Simple	Past Simple	“She works hard,” he said. He said (that) she worked .
Present Continuous	Past Continuous	“She has worked hard,” he said. He said (that) she was working hard.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect	“She has worked hard,” he said. He said (that) she had worked hard.
Present Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous	“She has been working hard,” he said. He said (that) she had been working hard.
Past Simple	Past Perfect	“She worked hard,” he said. He said (that) she had worked hard.
Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous	“She was working hard,” he said. He said (that) she had been working hard.
Past Perfect	Past Perfect (no change)	“She had worked hard,” he said. He said (that) she had worked hard.
Am/is/are going to	Was / were / going to	“She is going to work hard,” he said. He said (that) she was going to work hard.
Will	Would	“She will work hard,” he said. He said (that) she would work hard.
Can	Could	“She can work hard,” he said. He said (that) she could work hard.
Must	Had to	“She must work hard,” he said. He said (that) she had to work hard. “”
May	Might	“She may work hard,” he said. He said (that) she might work hard.

Reported questions

Сұрақтың екі түрлі тіке жолы бар:

1. Арнаулы сұрақтар (**Wh – questions**) - сұрақтар арнаулы сөздерден немесе сөз топтарынан басталады. Олар: **what, who, which, whose, when, where, why, how many, how much, how long** т.б.

2. Жалпы сұрақтар (**Yes/No - questions**): көмекші сұрақтардан немесе модальды етістіктерден басталады.

Арнаулы сұрақты төлеу сөзге айналдырғанда, сұрақ белгісі түсіп қалады да, сұраулы сөйлемнің реті хабарлы сөйлемнің ретіне айналады.

- *She asked, “Where are you going?”*

She asked us where we were going.

- *“Where does she live?”*

He asked me where she lived.

- *“Why did you apply for this job?” asked the sales manager.*

The sales manager asked me why I had applied for that job.

- *“When will I know the results of the examination?”*

Asem asked the examiner when she would know the results of the examination.

- *“How does the photocopier work?”*

I asked the salesman how the photocopier worked.

Жалпы сұрақты төлеулі сұраққа ауыстыру үшін **whether, if** көмекшілері қолданылады.

- *“Are you taking much money with you to France?”*

My bank manager wanted to know if (whether) I was taking much money with me to France.

- *“Have you ever been to Japan, Paul?”*

Tom asked Paul if (whether) he had ever been to Japan.

- *“Do you live in Astana?”*

I asked my new friend if (whether) she lived in Astana.

Changing Imperative sentences and Interrogative sentence from Direct into Indirect Speech

Бұйрықты сөйлем және сұраулы сөйлемде төл сөздің төлеу сөзге өзгеруі

Imperative sentence	Interrogative sentence	
	General questions	Special questions
She said to him, “Come at five o’clock” . → She told to him to come at five o’clock . I said to her, “Please, bring me a glass of water”. → I asked her to bring me a glass of water. He said to me, “Don’t go there” . → He told me not to go there .	“Do you want to see the new film” ? Ainur asked. → Ainur asked if I wanted to see the new film.	He asked me, “Why have you come so late?” → He asked me why I had come so late.

► Егер төл сөз бұйрықты білдіріп, *to say* етістігімен келсе, төлеу сөзде *to tell*, *to order* етістігіне ауысады. Егер төл сөз өтінішті білдірсе, *to say* етістігі *to ask* етістігіне өзгереді.

► Шақпен қиысу ережесі қолданылмайтын жағдай

Егер төлеу сөз сөзде жалпы факт, болған оқиға туралы хабар айтылса:

- a) *The teacher **told** us (that) **there are** four seasons in a year.*
- b) *He said **London is** the capital of the Great Britain.*
- c) *“The sun sets in the west” the teacher said. – The teacher **said** the sun sets in the west.*

► Егер алғашқы етістік осы шақ немесе келер шақта тұрса

- a) *The singer **says**, “I enjoy cycling”.*
*The singer **says** that she **enjoys** cycling.*

Төл сөздің төлеу сөзге айналуында сілтеу есімдіктерінің шағы мен орнының өзгеру ережесі.

Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Examples
yesterday	the day before, the previous day	He said, "I saw her yesterday". He said he had seen her the day before .
today	that day, the same day	He said, "I am seeing her today". He said she was seeing her that day.
now, at the moment	then, at that moment	"I'm shopping at the moment " said Asel. Asel said she was shopping at that moment .
tomorrow	the next/following day	"I am going shopping tomorrow " said Asel. Asel said she was going shopping the next / following day .
last week	the week before, the previous week	He said, "I saw her last week". He said he had seen her the week before .
next week	the week after, the following week	"I am going shopping next week" said Asel. Asel said she was going shopping the week after, (the following week)
this	that	He said, "I can translate this article." He said that he could translate that article.
these	those	She said "I like these dresses" She said that she liked those dresses
ago	before	He said, "I saw her two days ago". He said he had seen her two days before .
here	there	"I usually shop here " said Asel. Asel said she usually shopped there .

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Put the words “say” or “tell” where necessary and fill the sentences.

1. Ann _____ goodbye to me and left.
2. _____ us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?
3. Don't just stand there! _____ something!
4. I wonder where Sue is. She _____ he would be here at 8 o'clock.
5. Jack _____ me that he was fed up with his job.
6. The doctor _____ that I should rest for at least a week.
7. Don't _____ anybody what I _____. It's a secret just between us.
8. “Did she _____ you what happened?” “No, she didn't _____ anything to me.”
9. George couldn't help me. He _____ me to ask Kate.
10. George couldn't help me. He _____ to ask Kate.

✎ 2. Translate the following sentences into indirect speech

1. “You can't park here.” The police officer told Jack _____ .
2. “I'll see you in the morning, Helen” Peter told Helen _____ .
3. “I'm taking the 5.30 train tomorrow evening.” Janet said _____ .
4. “I left my umbrella here two days ago.” Susan said that _____ .
5. “I liked this hotel very much.” Diana told me _____ .
6. “I think it's going to rain tonight.” William said _____ .
7. “What time does the film start, Peter?” I asked Peter _____ .
8. “Are you enjoying your flight?” The flight attendant asked me _____ .
9. “Have you ever been to Japan, Paul?” Sue asked Paul _____ .
10. “How does the photocopier work?” I asked the salesman _____ .
11. “When will I know the results of the examination?” Maria asked the examiner _____ .

12. "Are you taking much money with you to France?" My bank manager wanted to know _____ .

13. "I'm really tired." _____ Polly said that _____ .

14. "I've been swimming." Michelle said _____ .

15. "I won't be at the next meeting." Robert _____ .

3. Translate the following sentences into indirect speech

What time does the text boat leave?

Can you tell me what time the next boat leaves?

1. Where can I change some money? Can you tell me _____ ?

2. Where is the bank? Could you possibly tell me _____ ?

3. Where do you come from? Could you tell me _____ ?

4. How much does this pullover cost? "I'd like to know _____ ?

5. Does this train go to the Gatwick Airport? Can you tell me _____ ?

TEST YOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant.

The teacher promised _____ .

- a) that we can learn three English songs.
- b) if we learn three English songs
- c) we would learn three English songs
- d) whether we would learn three English songs
- e) who will learn three English songs.

2. Choose the right variant.

Bill: "Have you seen any interesting comedy lately, Nancy?"

Bill asked Nancy ____.

- a) if he will see an interesting film
- b) if he saw an interesting comedy lately
- c) what comedy Nancy saw lately
- d) if she had seen any interesting comedy lately
- e) if she would see an interesting comedy

3. Choose the right variant.

Nick: "Did you see a bird in the tree?"

Nick wonders _____ in the tree.

- a) if I saw a bird
- b) that I saw a bird
- c) if I had seen a bird
- d) whether I see a bird.
- e) if I have seen a bird

4. Choose the right variant.

Dick to Lucy: Have you received my telegram?

Dick asked if _____ .

- a) Lucy has received his telegram
- b) Lucy has received his telegram
- c) Lucy would receive his telegram
- d) Lucy will receive his telegram
- e) Lucy received his telegram

5. Choose the right variant.

Ann: Write down my address.

Ann asked me _____ .

- a) he wrote down my address
- b) to write down her address
- c) he had written her address
- d) she writes down her address
- e) she wrote down his address

6. Choose the right variant.

He said, "I'm very busy today".

He said _____ .

a) he had been very busy that day

b) he is very busy today

c) he was very busy that day

d) I'm very busy today

e) I had been very busy that day

7. Choose the right variant.

Lena said, "Where have you been yesterday?"

Lena asked _____ .

a) where she had been the day before.

b) where she had been yesterday

c) where she was the day before

d) where she could be the day before

e) where she hasn't been before

8. Choose the right variant.

He thought: "What am I going to do?"

He thought _____ .

a) what was he going to do

b) what he was going to do

c) what he is going to do

d) it he was going to do

e) what is he going to do

9. Choose the right variant.

Mother asked me _____ .

a) why I have spent all the money

b) that I had spent all the money

c) if I had spent all the money

d) when I spend all the money

e) if I will spend all the money

10. Choose the right variant.

"Don't play in the street?"

a) My mother told me don't play in the street

b) My mother said to play in the street

c) She asked me to play in the street

d) My mother told me not to play in the street

e) My mother said I should play in the street

11. Choose the right variant.

Ann: "Is your sister good at English?"

Ann asked me _____ .

- a) that my sister is good at English
- b) if my sister was good at English
- c) whether my sister is good at English

- d) my sister is good at English
- e) her sister was good at English

12. Choose the right variant.

Tom: "Don't forget to bring my book, Ann".

Tom asked Ann: _____ .

- a) that she didn't forget to bring his book
- b) that she doesn't bring his book
- c) not to forget to bring his book

- d) not to forget to bring her book
- e) if she didn't forget to bring the book

13. Choose the right variant.

Mother: "We are going to have supper".

Mother says _____ .

- a) they are going to have supper
- b) they were going to have supper
- c) that they would have supper

- d) they won't have supper
- e) they haven't had supper yet

14. Choose the right variant.

Jack said: "I was at home yesterday".

Jack said _____ .

- a) he was at home
- b) Jack said he was at home the day before.
- c) he will be at home

- d) he had been at home a week ago
- e) he had been at home the day before.

15. Choose the right variant.

"Do you go for sports?", he asked.

He asked _____ .

- a) he went in for sports
- b) if I went in for sports
- c) if I'll go in for sports
- d) I should go in for sports

- e) if I had gone in for sports

16. Choose the right variant.

“Will Tom help me?” she said.

She asked _____ .

- a) will Tom help her
- b) if Tom would help her
- c) whether he will help her
- d) whether would he help her
- e) that Tom would be helping her

17. Choose the right variant.

Peter said, “Alice, are you busy now?”

Peter asked Alice _____ .

- a) she was busy
- b) if she was busy then
- c) she would be busy
- d) if she wasn't busy then
- e) if she is busy

18. Choose the right variant.

My sister said: “I hope we shall go on an excursion to the lake”.

My sister said that _____ on an excursion to the lake.

- a) she hopes we will go
- b) she didn't hope that we shall go
- c) she hoped they would go
- d) she hoped we were going
- e) she hoped we can go

19. Choose the right variant.

Teacher: “Tom, read the story, please”.

Teacher asked Tom _____ .

- a) to read the story
- b) read the story
- c) that he reads it
- d) whether he reads the story
- e) it he read the story

20. Choose the right variant.

“Whose birthday is it?” said Jane.

Jane asked whose birthday _____ .

- a) it is
- b) it
- c) it was
- d) is it
- e) it had been

UNIT XI

NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERBS

Жақсыз етістіктер

Жақсыз етістіктерге тұйық етістік (Infinitive), есімше (Participle), герундий (Gerund) жатады. Олар жаққа жіктелмейді, жекеше, көпше түрге бөлінбейді.

NON-FINITE FORMS

THE PARTICIPLE

THE INFINITIVE

THE GERUND

THE GERUND – ГЕРУНДИЙ

Герундий етістік пен зат есімнің ерекшеліктерін байланыстыратын етістіктің жіктелмеген формасы. Герундий кез-келген ағылшын етістігінің инфинитив формасына **-ing** жалғауы жалғау арқылы жасалады. Герундийде етістік пен зат есімнің белгілері болдаы. Оның етістік сияқты шағы, етіс категориялары бар.

Герундийдің сөйлемдегі қызметі мен қолданылуы

► **Subject** - Бастауыш

Playing tennis is fun.

Smoking is bad for you.

► **Part of a compound nominal predicate** Етіс болатын баяндауыш

*Her greatest pleasure is **travelling**.*

*Me favorite activity is **swimming**.*

► **Object** – Толықтауыш

*We enjoy **playing** tennis.*

*I hate **smoking**.*

► **Attribute** – Анықтауыш

*I had the pleasure of **reading** in the newspaper of your success.*

*There are different ways of **obtaining** this substance.*

► **Adverbial modifier** - Пысықтауыш

*She walked out of the room **smoking**.*

*In **writing** the test the student made some mistakes.*

► Етістік **-ing** формасында *герундий (gerund)* де, *есімше (participle I)* де бола алады, бірақ олардың мағыналары әртүрлі.

*A **waiting** room (a room for waiting) – бастауыш*

*A **waiting** train (a train that is waiting) - есімше*

*A **sleeping** pill – герундий*

*A **sleeping** child - есімше*

Герундий **Indefinite, Perfect** шақтарында және **Active, Passive** етіс формаларында келеді.

Form	Active	Passive
Indefinite	cleaning	being cleaning
Perfect	having cleaned	having been cleaned

► Егер герундий іс-әрекетті жасаушы қызметін атқаратын болса, онда герундий **Active** формасында қолданылады.

*Ruslan likes **washing** his cat.*

*I remember **having** told the news.*

*Not **knowing** what to do, I went home.*

► Егер герундий басқа біреудің немесе нәрсенің тарапынан іске асырылып жатса, онда герундий **Passive** формасында қолданылады.

*The cat likes **being washed** by Ruslan.*

*I remember **having been told** the news.*

*She loves **being looked at**.*

*She is **not having been invited**.*

Мына етістіктер, есімдіктер, сын есімдерден кейін герундий жиі толықтауыш ретінде қолданылады:

to accuse of
to approve (disapprove) of
to hear of
the think of
to suspect of
to be afraid of
to be capable (incapable) of
to be proud of doing
to be found of to be disappointed
to be surprised at
to be responsible for
to be interested in
to insist on
to object to
to get used to / to be used to
to succeed in
to prevent from

Зат есімдер керек ететін демеуліктерден кейін герундий анықтауыш функциясында қолданылады. Оларға мыналар жатады:

<p><i>apology (for)</i> <i>art of</i> <i>pleasure of</i> <i>importance of</i> <i>plan (for)</i> <i>chance, opportunity of</i> <i>possibility of</i> <i>habit of</i> <i>preparation (for)</i> <i>hope of</i> <i>astonishment of</i> <i>thought of</i> <i>method of</i></p>	<p><i>problem of</i> <i>fear of</i> <i>interest (in)</i> <i>idea of</i> <i>process of</i> <i>reason of</i> <i>skill (in)</i> <i>intention of</i> <i>objection to</i> <i>surprise of</i> <i>experience (of)</i> <i>necessity of</i></p>
---	---

*I hate the **idea of getting** old. (Not the idea to get old.)*

*The **thought of failing** the exam, makes him angry.*

*I have no **reason for telling** the lie.*

*We were discussing the **necessity of** employing more stuff.*

*It was her first **experience of living** alone.*

*They have given up **hope of finding** any more survivors.*

*I have no **objection to sitting** here.*

► Анықтауыш функциясында герундийдің қолданылуы:

1. **On (upon), after, before, in** уақытты білдіру үшін

***Before doing** the exercise, read the instructions.*

***After reading** the story he answered the questions.*

2. For причина

*Excuse me **for shouting** at you.*

3. For мақсатты білдіру үшін

*I need something **for killing** flies.*

*A lawn-mower is a machine **for cutting** grass and weeds.*

► Герундиймен қолданылатын етістіктер тізбегі

• *I enjoy **playing** tennis.*

• *I remember **locking** the door.*

• *He admitted **breaking** the window.*

- *I don't fancy going out this evening.*
- *You should practice introducing yourself.*
- *He admitted stealing the money.*
- *She advised waiting until tomorrow.*
- *I anticipate having a good time on vacation.*
- *I appreciated heaving form them.*
- *He avoided answering my question.*
- *I can't bear waiting in long lines.*
- *It began raining.*
- *I finally completed writing my term paper.*
- *I will consider going with you.*
- *He continued speaking.*
- *He delayed leaving for school.*
- *She denied committing the crime.*
- *The discussed opening the business.*
- *I dislike driving long distances.*
- *We enjoyed visiting them.*
- *She finished studying about ten.*
- *I'll never forget visiting Napoleon's tomb.*
- *I hate making silly mistakes.*
- *I can't help worrying about it.*
- *I keep hoping he will come.*
- *I like going to movies.*
- *I love going to operas.*
- *She mentioned going to a movie.*
- *Would you mind helping me with this?*
- *I miss being with my family.*
- *Let's postpone leaving until tomorrow.*
- *The athlete practiced throwing the ball.*
- *Ann prefers walking to driving to works.*
- *He quit trying to solve the problem.*
- *I don't recall meeting him before.*
- *I don't recollect meeting him before.*
- *She recommended seeing the show.*
- *I regret telling him my secret.*
- *I can remember meeting him when I was a child.*
- *I resent her interfering in my business.*
- *I couldn't resist eating the dessert.*
- *She risks losing all of her money.*

- *I can't stand waiting in long lines.*
- *It started raining.*
- *She stopped going to classes when she got sick.*
- *She suggested going to a movie.*
- *She won't tolerate cheating during an examination.*
- *I tried changing the light bulb, but the lamp still didn't work.*
- *I don't understand his leaving school.*

► Герундий және Инфинитивпен келетін етістіктер:

Forget / remember

• *I remembered seeing the Alps for the first time.* (өткен шақта)

Asel always remembers to lock the door. (Әсел есікті жабуды ұмытпайды)

• *I'll never forget flying over the Pacific Ocean. It was wonderful.* (... ешқашан ұмытпаймын)

• *I forgot to switch on the machine.* (қосуды ұмытып кетіпін)

Mean

• *I think Bolat meant to break the glass. I didn't look an accident.* (шыны ыдысты сындыруға тырысты)

• *I'm applying for a visa. It means filing in this form.*

Regret

• *Azar regretted not buying the house.* (Ажар үйді сатып алмағанына өкінді)

• *I regret to tell you that you have failed.* (айтуға өкінішті)

Stop

• *He stopped eating junk food because it is unhealthy.*

• *I stopped to buy some coffee.* (сатып алу үшін тоқтады)

Try

• *Why don't you try getting up early?* (тырысу)

• *I tried to get up early, but I couldn't.* (әрекет жасады)

Go on

• *The teacher introduced herself and went on to explain about the course.* (Түсіндіруге көшті)

• *The teacher told everyone to be quite, but they just went on talking.* (Сөйлесуді жалғастырды)

EXERCISES

✎ Put the verbs in the following sentences:

Try, steal, meet, look, write, make, be run, wash, play, eat, splash, go, drive, take.

For example: Do you miss playing tennis every afternoon?

1. Could you please stop ... so much noise?
2. I don't enjoy letters.
3. Does your job involve ... a lot of people?
4. I considered ... the job, but in the end I decided against it.
5. If you use the shower, try and avoid ... water on the floor.
6. Jake gave up ... to be an actor and decided to become a teacher.
7. Have you finished ... your hair yet?
8. The phone rang while Ann was having dinner. She didn't answer it; she just went on ...
9. She admitted ... the car but denied ... it dangerously.
10. Why do you keep on ... at me like that?
11. They had to postpone ... away because their son was sick.
12. If you cross the street without looking, you risk ... over by a car.

✎ 2. Open the brackets.

1. Please remember ... to close ... the door when you go out. (close)
I remember ... the door, but I'm not sure that I locked it.
2. I paid the electricity bill, but I don't remember ... the rent, (pay) Oh dear! I think I forgot ... the rent this month.
3. I tried ... in a department store, but it wasn't a very good job. (work) You really must try ... harder.
4. She just went on ... about everything, (complain). She complained about everything else, and then she went on ... about the price.
5. I remember ... the money in the drawer, but it's not there now. (leave) I must remember ... some money to pay for the repairs.
6. I really regret ... everyone what happened. I should have kept it a secret, (tell) I regret ... you that there has been a serious accident.
7. I remember ... to the dentist as a child, (go) I must remember ... to the dentist on Wednesday.
8. I'll never forget ... Paris for the first time, (visit). We mustn't forget ... Monique when we're in Paris.

✎ **3** Open the brackets using the suitable form of the Gerund.

1. Excuse me for (to break) your beautiful vase.
2. You never mentioned (to be) to Greece.
3. She was proud of (to award) the cup of a champion.
4. I don't remember ever (to meet) your sister.
5. I don't remember (to ask) this question by anybody.
6. The cat was punished for (to break) the cup.
7. The cat was afraid of (to punish) and hid itself under the sofa.
8. The machine needs (to clean).
9. I am quite serious in (to say) that I don't want to go abroad.
10. He seemed sorry for (to be) inattentive to his child.
11. She confessed to (to forget) to send the letter.
12. The old man could not stand (to tell) what he should do.
13. Going to the party was no use: he had no talent for (to dance).
14. The Bronze Horseman is worth (to see).
15. After thoroughly (to examine) the student, the professor gave him a satisfactory mark.
16. After thoroughly (to examine) by the examination commission, the student was given a satisfactory mark.
17. She accused him (to steal) her purse.
18. She reproached me for (not to write) to her.
19. This job is not worth (to take).
20. After (to look) through and (to mark) the student's papers, the teacher handed them back.
21. After (to look) through and (to mark), the papers were handed back to the students.
22. These clothes want (to wash).
23. David was very glad of (to find) his aunt.

✎ **4.** Translate into Kazakh paying attention to the different forms of Gerund:

1. Watching football matches may be exciting enough, but of course it is more exciting enough, but of course it is more exciting playing football.

2. She stopped coming to see us, and I wondered what had happened to her.

3. Can you remember having seen the man before?

4. She was terrified of having to speak to anybody, and even more, of being spoken to

5.He was on the point of leaving the club, as the porter stopped him.

6.After being corrected by the teacher, the students' papers were returned to them.

7.I wondered at my mother's having allowed the journey.

8.I understand perfectly your wishing to start the work at once.

9.Everybody will discuss the event, there is no preventing it.

10.At last he broke the silence by inviting everybody to walk into the dining-room.

11.On being told the news she turned pale.

12.The place is worth visiting.

TEST YOURSELF

1. Бұл сөйлемде герундий ненің қызметін атқарып тұр?
Her greatest pleasure was swimming.

- a) пысықтауыш
- b) баяндауыш
- c) анықтауыш
- d) толықтауыш
- e) бастауыш

2. Мысалға қарап қай формаға жататынын анықтаңыз:
Watching

- a) Indefinite Infinitive Active
- b) Gerund
- c) Infinitive Passive
- d) Participle 2
- e) Progressive Infinitive

3. Герундий сөйлемді табыңыз:

- a) He admitted stealing.
- b) She was stealing the money from father's pocket.
- c) I saw her stealing the money.
- d) She has been stealing my thoughts.
- e) He is going to steal her this evening.

4. Мысалға қарап қай формаға жататынын анықтаңыз:
Giving

- a) Indefinite Infinitive Active
- b) Gerund
- c) Infinitive Passive
- d) Participle 2
- e) Progressive Infinitive

5. Бұл сөйлемде герундий ненің қызметін атқарып тұр?
She was fond of drawing when she was a child.

- a) пысықтауыш
- b) баяндауыш
- c) анықтауыш
- d) толықтауыш
- e) бастауыш

6. Герундий сөйлемді табыңыз:

- a) She has told me the lie.
- b) I regret telling him my secret.
- c) She is telling me everything.
- d) I heard them telling funny stories.
- e) There is a new building near our house.

7. Бұл сөйлемде герундий ненің қызметін атқарып тұр?
Reading is her hobby.

- a) пысықтауыш
- b) баяндауыш
- c) анықтауыш
- d) толықтауыш
- e) бастауыш

8. Мысалға қарап қай формаға жататынын анықтаңыз:

I was accused of stealing money from my teacher.

- a) Adjective
- b) Gerund
- c) Infinitive
- d) Participle 2
- e) Progressive Infinitive

9. Мысалға қарап қай формаға жататынын анықтаңыз:

Cleaning

- a) Infinitive Perfect
- b) Gerund
- c) Infinitive Simple
- d) Participle 2
- e) Infinitive Passive

10. Бұл сөйлемде герундий ненің қызметін атқарып тұр?

Driving is pleasant.

- a) пысықтауыш
- b) баяндауыш
- c) анықтауыш
- d) толықтауыш
- e) бастауыш

11. Мысалға қарап қай формаға жататынын анықтаңыз:

I'm afraid of being alone.

- a) Verb
- b) Gerund
- c) Adjective
- d) Participle 2
- e) Infinitive

12. Сөйлемдегі етістікті тиісті формаға қойыңыз:

This book is worth (read)

- a) to read
- b) reading
- c) to reading
- d) read
- e) to have read

13. Сөйлемдегі етістікті тиісті формаға қойыңыз:

One of the boys admitted (break) the window.

- a) to break
- b) breaking
- c) to breaking
- d) broke
- e) to have broken

14. Сөйлемдегі етістікті тиісті формаға қойыңыз:

My brother has given up (smoke) He thinks it's a waste of money.

- a) to smoking
- b) to have smoked
- c) smoking
- d) smoke
- e) to smoke

15. Сөйлемдегі етістікті тиісті формаға қойыңыз:

I don't fancy (go out) this evening.

- a) to have gone out
- b) to go out
- c) go out
- d) to going out
- e) going out

16. Сөйлемдегі етістікті тиісті формаға қойыңыз:

Sam denied (cheat.)

- a) to cheat
- b) to cheating
- c) cheating
- d) cheat
- e) to have cheated

17. Сөйлемде герундий толықтауыш:

- a) Before sleeping I called my brother.
- b) Sleeping is my best friend.
- c) I'm used to sleeping with the open window.
- d) Sleeping Beauty.
- e) The baby is sleeping.

18. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

We were tired of walking in the town.

- a) Gerund
- b) Adverb
- c) Pronoun
- d) Adjective
- e) Participle II

19. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

The lady standing in the corner of the room was his mother.

- a) Adverb
- b) Verb
- c) Noun
- d) Participle
- e) Adjective

20. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

Go on reading and translating the text.

- a) Noun
- b) Verb
- c) Gerund
- d) Adverb
- e) Adjective

21. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

Entering the room I saw him.

- a) Participle
- b) Verb
- c) Noun
- d) Adverb
- e) Adjective

22 Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

The question discussed at the meeting was very interesting and useful.

- a) Participle
- b) Verb
- c) Noun
- d) Adverb
- e) Adjective

23. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

He entered the room without seeing me.

- a) Verb
- b) Participle
- c) Gerund
- d) Noun
- e) Adverb

24. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

I am fond of collecting coins.

- a) Adverb
- b) Participle
- c) Verb
- d) Noun
- e) Gerund

25. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

I watched the playing children with great interest.

- a) Gerund
- b) Prticipple
- c) Verb
- d) Noun
- e) Adverb

PARTICIPLE - ЕСІМШЕ (-ING AND –ED FORMS)

Ағылшын тілінде есімше етістіктің жіктелмеген формасы. Ағылшын есімшесі сөйлемде анықтауыштың немесе толықтауыштың қызметін атқарады.

Есімше формалары

Өзінен кейін тура толықтауышты қабылдайтын етістіктердің негізгі етісте екі есімше формасы және ырықсыз етісте үш есімше формасы бар.

TENSE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	Writing	Being written
Past	-	Written
Perfect	Having written	Having been written

Есімшенің қолданылуы

► Present Participle Active (Participle I)

Present Participle Active (Participle I) етістіктің инфинитив формасына (to бөлшегінсіз) **-ing** жалғауын жалғау арқылы жасалады.

to cry – crying, to fall – falling, to make – making

1. Present Participle Active – баяндауыш етістікпен қатар жүрген істі білдіреді.

- *Who is the fat man **sitting** in the corner?*
- *You cannot sit **watching** television all day.*
- *He is lying in bed **reading** a novel.*

2. Present Participle зат есімнен кейін анықтауыш функциясын атқарады:

- *I love to look at **falling** leaves*
- *The **screaming** children were playing in the kindergarten.*

► **Present Participle** пысықтауыш функциясын атқарады:

а) мезгіл пысықтауыштың алдында әдетте **while** немесе **when** келеді:

- *While doing gymnastics I injured my knee. (=While I was doing.)*

- *Opening the bottle, Mike poured the drinks. (=When Mike opened the bottle, he poured.)*

ә) себеп-салдар пысықтауыш:

- *Knowing her pretty well, I realized something was wrong. (=As I knew her pretty well.)*

- *Not wishing to continue her studies, she decided to become a hairdresser.*

б) қимыл-сын пысықтауыш:

- *He walked down the road limping.*

► **Perfect Participle Active**

Perfect Participle Active Present Participle формасындағы көмекші етістік **to have** және Present Participle формасындағы негізгі етістік арқылы жасалады (**having asked**).

Perfect Participle Active баяндауыш-етістік көрсететін іске дейін аяқталған істі көрсетеді және себеп-салдар және мезгіл пысықтауыш функциясын атқарады.

- *Having failed my medical exams I took up desingning. (=As I had failed).*

- *Having spent all his money. Peter couldn't afford a new jacket. (=As he had spent).*

- *Having repaired the car. Tom took it out for a road test. (=After he had repaired the car).*

- *Having photocopied all the papers. Sarah put them back in the file. (=After she had photocopied).*

► **Present Participle Passive**

Present Participle Passive сөйлеу кезінде басқа біреудің тарапынан атқарылған іс-әрекетті білдіреді.

Present Participle Passive *being* + **Past Participle** арқылы жасалады: *being written, being asked being invited.*

► **Present Participle Passive қолданылуы:**

а) анықтауыш функциясында:

• *The building **being painted** is a new school.* (=Which is being painted).

• *Yesterday teacher told us about the buildings now **being built** in Astana.* (=The buildings which are now being built).

ә) себеп-салдар және мезгіл пысықтауыш функциясында:

• ***Being packed** in wooden boxes, the goods arrived in good condition.* (=As the goods were packed in wood boxes....)

• ***Being invited** to the party, he answered that he would be away for two weeks.* (=When he was invited).

Анықтауыш функциясын атқарып тұрған **Passive Participle Passive** орнына **Past Participle** немесе **Present Participle Passive** жиі қолданылады.

• *Being packed in wooded boxes.* (=Packed / having been packed.)

• *Being invited to the party.* (=Invited to the party).

► **Past Participle Passive (Participle II)**

Past Participle Passive етістіктің 3 формасы. (Participle II = V3)

• *to ask - asked*

• *to give - given*

• *to break - broken*

• *to clean – cleaned*

• *to know - known*

• *to watch –watched*

• *to do – done*

Not болымсыз бөлшегі есімшенің алдында қойылады:

not asking - сұрамай, not sold – сатылмаған

► **Past Participle зат есімнің функциясын анықтау үшін қолданылады:**

• *The **torn** letter was lying on the floor.*

• *She has got a **broken** heart.*

Past Participle баяндауштың функциясында:

• *The window is **broken**.*

• *You are **fired**.*

Past Participle себеп-салдар және мезгіл пысықтауыш функциясында:

- *Rejected by all his friends, he decided to become a monk.*
- *Talked to you I felt better.*

► Perfect Participle Passive

Perfect Participle Passive having been + Past Participle арқылы жаслады: **having invited, having been bought.**

• **Having been done** wrong the homework wasn't accepted. (=As the homework had been done wrong.)

• **Having been introduced** we shook our hands. (=After we had been introduced).

Object + Participle (clause)

Сезім мүшелері арқылы қабылдауды білдіретін етістіктерден кейін (to see – көру, to hear - есту, to feel - сезу, to watch - қарау, to notice - байқау, to smell – иіс шығару) объекті септік осы шақтың есімшесімен қолданылады. Ол объектік септігі есімдік немесе жалпы септіктегі зат есім мен осы шақтың есімшесі (Present Participle) байланысын көрсетеді.

- *I saw him crossing the road.*
- *I saw him cross the road.*

Дегенмен екеуінің арасында айырмашылық бар. Объектік есімше құрылымы істеліп жатырған істі көрсетсе (*I saw him crossing the road*), объектік инфинитив құрылымы аяқталған істі көрсетеді (*I saw him cross the road*.)

• **I heard him sing** the song. (I heard the song from the beginning to the end)

• **I heard him singing** the sing. (He was singing, I heard only part of the song).

- **I found her eating** my cake.
- He **watched** the tree **being** cut down.

► Participle Adjectives

Participle Adjectives interesting – interested сын есімдерінен жасалған есімше:

1. Past Participle interested, bored, excited and confused т.б. сөйлеушінің жай-күйін білдіреді.

- I was **very interested** in the lesson.

- I did not enjoy the party because I was **bored**.

- His explanation made me very **confused**.

2. Present Participle interesting, boring, exciting, confusing

- She is an **interesting** teacher, and I'm **interested** in her lesson.

- Tom told us an **amusing** story. We were **amused** at Tom's story.

- I did not enjoy the party. It was **boring**.

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Use the right participle:

1. Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee. Joe hurt his knee playing football.
2. She finished her work. Then she went home. Having finished her work, she went home.
3. I was watching television. I fell asleep.
4. A friend of mine slipped and fell. He was getting off a bus. A friend of mine
5. We bought our tickets. Then we went into the theatre.
6. Laura was driving to work yesterday. She had an accident.
7. After I had done the shopping, I went for a cup of coffee.
8. They had dinner and then they continued their journey.
9. I was walking home in the rain. I got very wet.
10. I felt tired. So I went to bed early.
11. I didn't know his phone number. So I wasn't able to contact him.
12. We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.
13. A boy was injured in the accident. He was taken to hospital. The boy was taken to hospital.
14. A house was damaged in the storm. It has now been repaired. The house ...haven't been found yet.
15. Some painting were stolen from the museum. They haven't been found yet. The ... haven't been found yet.

✎ 2. Use the right participle, - ing, or – ed.

1. I was surprise _____ to see my boss there.
2. It was surprise _____ to see him.
3. I find this work very tir _____ .
4. It makes me tir _____ .
5. Her exam results were disappoint _____ .
6. She was pretty disappoint _____ .
7. I was interest _____ in the lessons.
8. Her lessons are always interest _____ .
9. Do you ever get bor _____ at work.
10. My job's pretty bor _____ .

TESTYOURSELF

1. Choose the right participle:

A ... vase

a) to breaking

b) breaking

c) broken

d) to break

e) to broken

2. Choose the right verb:

I went to see how she was and found her

a) laughed

b) laughing

c) has been laughing

d) were laughing

e) laughs

3. Choose the right participle:

The day

a) followed

b) follow

c) following

d) followed

e) following

4. Choose the right participle:

A ... guest

a) to come

b) come

c) coming

d) has coming

e) came

5. Choose the right participle:

... people

a) Being shouting

b) Shouting

c) Shouted

d) Has Shouted

e) Shout

6. Choose the right participle:

She says she's got a ... heart.

a) breaking

b) break

c) having break

d) broken

e) breaks

7. Choose the right participle:

A meat animal

a) had eaten

b) eat

c) is eaten

d) eating

e) to eat

8. Choose the right participle:

“The ... Beauty”

a) Sleeped

b) Slepted

c) Sleeping

d) Having Slept

e) Slpet

9. Choose the right participle:

A ... dog.

a) losing

b) lost

c) lose

d) losed

e) losing

10. Choose the right participle:

He is well in the art world.

a) have known

b) knew

c) know

d) knowing

e) known

11. Choose the right participle:

... .. cake

a) homing – made

b) home-made

c) home-making

d) home-makes

e) homing-making

12. ... etiquette

a) Speaking

b) Spokening

c) Speaked

d) Spoken

e) Spoking

13. Choose the right participle:

A very ... child.

a) frightening

b) frightening

c) frightened

d) frighten

e) frightending

14. Choose the right participle:

a ... cup

a) washed

b) washd

c) washing

d) washes

e) wash

15. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

Your dress wants cleaning

a) Gerund

b) Participle

c) Verb

d) Noun

e) Adverb

16. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

I have finished writing the dictation.

- | | |
|---------------|---------|
| a) Adjective | d) Verb |
| b) Gerund | e) Noun |
| c) Participle | |

17. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

Watching the animals in the Zoo was great fun for my sister.

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| a) Gerund | d) Adjective |
| b) Verb | e) Noun |
| c) Adverb | |

18. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

This is a picture painted by Joseph Turner.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| a) Participle | d) Present Simple |
| b) Verb | e) Participle II |
| c) Pronoun | |

19. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

Arriving at the station I decided to buy a ticket and wait for the train.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| a) Past Continuous | d) Participle II |
| b) Participle | e) Present Simple |
| c) Pronoun | |

20. Choose the right variant Gerund or Participle?

Having completed our work we went shopping.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| a) Participle II | d) Past Continuous |
| b) Present Simple | e) Participle |
| c) Gerund | |

INFINITIVE – ИНФИНИТИВ

Ағылшын тілінде инфинитив жақты, шақты, райды көрсетпей, іс-әрекеттің іске асуын тек қана айтатын етістіктің жіктелмеген формасы. Инфинитив не істеу? не жасау? деген сұрақтарға жауап береді. Әдетте инфинитив “to” демеулігімен қолданылады.

► Инфинитивтің сөйлемдегі қызметі мен қолданылуы

Subject – баяндауыш функциясын атқарады

- *To make mistakes is easy. (Old English)*
- *It's easy to make mistakes. (Modern English)*
- *To wait for people who are always late makes me angry.*
- *It makes me angry to wait for people who are always late.*
- *It was difficult to confess that I had stolen her money.*

► Object – тура толықтауыш функциясын атқарады

- *Police warned us not to go there.*
- *She asked me to wait a little.*
- *She wants to dance.*
- *She wants him to help her.*

► **Attribute – анықтауыш функциясында:** зат есімнен кейін келеді немесе **wish, desire, decide, need** етістіктерінен жасалған зат есімнен кейін

- *I have to wish to change. (=I don't wish to change)*
- *I told her about my decision to leave. I told her that I had made decision to leave.*
- *Is there any need to ask Kamila? Do we need to ask Kamila?*

► Инфинитив анықтауыш функциясын атқарғанда **the first, the second, the third, the last, only** сөздерінен кейін жиі кездеседі.

- *Who was the first person to climb Everest without oxygen?*
- *She's the only scientist to have won three Nobel prizes.*

► **Adverbial modifiers of purpose – пысықтауыш функциясында**

1) мақсат пысықтауыш

- *I sat down to rest.*
- *I am going to Australia to learn German.*
- *To switch on, press the red button.*

Сөйлемде инфинитив алдында **so as to** немесе **in order to** деген жалғаулықтар тұруы мүмкін.

- *He got up early in order to have time to pack.*
- *I moved to a new flat so as to be near my work.*

So as және **in order** көбіне болымсыз сөйлемдерде кездеседі.

- *I'm going to leave now, so as not to be late.*

2) мекен пысықтауыш to, enough сөздерімен

- *I don't know him well enough to ask him for help.*
- *I was too young to understand what was happening.*

► **Part of a compound nominal predicate – есім сөзді күрделі баяндауыш**

- *Her dream was to become an actress.*
- *To travel means to enlarge your horizons.*

Part of a compound verbal predicate – етістікті күрделі баяндауыш (begin, start, continue, cease, used to, would)

- *He began to speak about his plans.*
- *She started to make tea sandwiches.*

Инфинитив формасы

Өзінен кейін тура толықтауыш қабылдайтын инфинитивтің негізгі етісте төрт формасы, ырықсыз етісте екі формасы бар. Өзінен кейін тура толықтауыш қабылдайтын инфинитивтің негізгі етісте екі формасы бар.

Етіс шақ	Active	Passive
Indefinite (Simple)	to give	to be asked
Continuous	to be giving	
Perfect / (past)	to have given	to have been asked
Perfect continuous	to have been giving	

Ағылшын тілінде ең көп қолданылатын формалары - **Indefinite Infinitive Active** және **Passive**. Қалған инфинитив формалары өте сирек қолданылады. Олардың ішінде басқаларына қарағанда жиірек қолданылатыны **Perfect Infinitive**.

1. Indefinite Infinitive Active (Simple Infinitive) – **to tell, to see.**
 - *I want to see the manager.*

2. Continuous Infinitive Active (Progressive) – **to be + Ving – to be telling, to be sitting, to be smoking.**

- *It's nice to be sitting here.*
- *I noticed that he seemed to be smoking a lot.*
- *He is said to be living here. (They say that he is living here)*

3. Perfect Infinitive Active – **to have + past participle (participle II) – to have told, to have finished.**

- *It's nice to have read the book. = It's nice that I have read the book.*
- *I'm glad to have seen her. = I'm glad that I have seen her.*
- *I was sorry to have disturbed him. = I was sorry that I had disturbed him.*
- *We hope to have finished the job soon = ... that we will have finished*
- *He is said to have lived in Almaty. = ... that he has lived...*

Perfect Infinitive сонымен қатар бір себептермен орындалмай қалған іс-қимылды (“**unreal**” **past**) көрсетеді:

- *I meant to have phoned, but I forgot.*
- *He was to have been the new ambassador, but he fell ill.*

Perfect Infinitive could, might, ought, should, would, need not модальды етістіктерінен кейін орындалуы тиіс іс-қимылдың (**unreal situations**) орындалмай қалғанын білдіреді.

- *You should have written the composition. (The person didn't write).*
- *I would have gone to university if my parents had had more money. (The speaker did not go to university).*
- *You could have helped him. (The person did not help).*

4. Perfect Continuous Infinitive Active – **to have been + Ving – to have been doing, to have been watching.**

- *I would like to have been sitting there when she walked in.*
- *He is said to have been living in Astana. (They say that he has been / was living in Astana.)*
- *The ship is thought to have returned to India.*

5. Indefinite Infinitive Passive – **to be + Past Participle – to be done, to be told.**

- *There is a lot of work to be done.*
- *She hopes to be chosen for the national team.*
- *She loves to be loved.*

6. Perfect Infinitive Passive – **to have been Past Participle – to have been done.**

- *You could have been killed.*
- *Gauhar is fortunate to have been given a scholarship.*

► **Infinitive to демеулігімен**

Infinitive әдетте **to демеулігімен** қолданылады: **to buy, to write, to run** etc. **Infinitive to** демеулігімен келесі етістіктерден кейін қолданылады:

- **afford:** *I can't afford to buy it.*
- **agree:** *They agreed to help us.*
- **appear:** *She appears to be tired.*
- **arrange:** *I will arrange to meet you at the airport.*
- **ask:** *He asked to come with us.*
- **can't bear:** *I can't bear to wait in long lines.*
- **beg:** *He begged to come with us.*
- **begin:** *It began to rain.*
- **care:** *I don't care to see that show.*
- **claim:** *She claims to know a famous movie star.*
- **consent:** *She finally consented to marry him.*
- **continue:** *He continued to speak.*
- **decide:** *I have decided to leave on Monday.*
- **demand:** *I demand to know who is responsible.*
- **expect:** *I expect to enter graduate school in the fall.*
- **fail:** *She failed to return the book to the library on time.*
- **forget:** *I forget to write the letter.*
- **hate:** *I hate to make silly mistakes.*
- **hesitate:** *Don't hesitate to ask for my help.*
- **hope:** *Jack hopes to arrive next week.*
- **learn:** *He learned to play the piano.*
- **like:** *I like to do gymnastics.*
- **love:** *I love to go to operas.*
- **manage:** *She managed to finish her work early.*

- **mean:** *I did not mean to hurt your feelings.*
- **need:** *I need to have your opinion.*
- **offer:** *The offered to help us.*
- **plan:** *I am planning to have a party.*
- **prefer:** *Ann prefers to walk to work.*
- **prepare:** *We prepared to welcome them.*
- **pretend:** *He pretends not to understand.*
- **promise:** *I promise not to be late.*
- **refuse:** *I refuse to believe his story.*
- **remember:** *I regret to tell you that you failed.*
- **seem:** *I remembered to lock the door.*
- **cannot stand:** *I cannot stand to wait in long lines.*
- **start:** *It started to rain.*
- **struggle:** *I struggled to stay awake.*
- **swear:** *She swore to tell the truth.*
- **threaten:** *She threatened to tell my parents.*
- **try:** *I'm trying to learn English.*
- **volunteer:** *He volunteered to help us.*
- **want:** *I want to tell you something.*
- **wish:** *She wishes to come with us.*

То демеулігінсіз қолданылатын етістіктер:

1. can (could), may (might), should, must, will, shall, would
 модалді етістіктерінен кейін

- *You **must** do it at once.*
- *She **can** speak English*
- *You **should** try to do your best.*
- *You **had better** go home now.*
- *You **needn't** worry.*

2. let, make, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, help етістіктерінен
 кейін (American English)

- *My father **lets** me drive his car.*
- ***Let's** go to the cinema*
- *Could you **help** me lay the table?*
- *Sad movies **make** me cry.*
- *Did you **feel** the earth move?*
- *I **heard** him sing "Figaro".*
- *I **saw** him cut the carpet.*

Есте сақтаңыз!

Ырықсыз етісте **hear, make, see** етістіктері **to** демеулігімен қолданылады:

Active (Өзгелік етіс)

- *The teacher **made me stand** in the corner.*

Passive (Ырықсыз етіс)

- *I **was made to stand** in the corner.*

The Objective Infinitive construction Complex object

«Объективтік септік инфинитивпен» немесе «күрделі толықтауыш» құрылымы ағылшын тілінде кейбір етістіктерден кейін бағыныңқылы сөйлемдердің орнына қолданылады. Ол объективтік септіктегі есімдіктің немесе жалпы септіктергі зат есіммен инфинитивтің байланысы арқылы беріледі.

Мына етістіктерден кейін **object + infinitive** қолданылады:

- **advise:** *She advised me to wait until tomorrow.*
- **allow:** *She allowed me to use her car.*
- **ask:** *I asked John to help us.*
- **beg:** *They begged us to come.*
- **cause:** *Her laziness caused her to fail.*
- **challenge:** *She challenged me to race her to the corner.*
- **convince:** *I couldn't convince him to accept our help.*
- **dare:** *He dared me to do better than he had done.*
- **encourage:** *He encouraged me to try again.*
- **expect:** *I expect you to be on time.*
- **forbid:** *I forbid you to tell him.*
- **force:** *The forced him to tell the truth.*
- **hire:** *She hired a boy to mow lawn.*
- **instruct:** *He instructed them to be careful.*
- **invite:** *Harry invited the John sons to come to his party.*
- **need:** *We needed Chris to help us figure out the solution.*
- **order:** *The judge ordered me to pay a fine.*
- **permit:** *He permitted the children to stay up late.*
- **persuade:** *I persuaded him to come for a visit.*

- **remind:** *She reminded me to lock the door.*
- **require:** *Our teacher requires us to be on time.*
- **teach:** *My brother taught me to swim.*
- **tell:** *The doctor told me to take these pills.*
- **urge:** *I urged her to apply for the job.*
- **want:** *I want you to be happy.*
- **warn:** *I warned you not to drive too fast.*

Prefer, would rather, had better		
<i>prefer + noun / - ing + to + noun / - ing</i>	Жалпы қалауды білдіреді	a) <i>I prefer biology to history.</i> b) <i>I prefer reading English texts to speaking in English.</i>
<i>would prefer + full infinitive + rather than (+bare/full infinitive)</i>	Қалауды білдіреді	a) <i>I'd rather to have the lessons on Wednesday rather than (to) have it on Tuesday, if that's possible.</i>
<i>would rather + bare infinitive + than (+bare infinitive)</i>	Жалпы қалауды білдіреді	a) <i>I'd rather have the lessons on Wednesday than (have it) on Tuesday, if possible.</i>
<i>Would rather + sb + past simple / past continuous</i>	Қалауды білдіру (біреуге қатысты)	a) <i>I'd rather you didn't sit next to me.</i>
<i>had better + bare infinitive</i>	Кеңес беру	a) <i>You'd better ask your parents if you can come on the school trip.</i>

EXERCISES

✎ Put the verbs to the right form:

1. Don't forget _____ the letter I gave you.
2. Jill has decided not _____ a car.
3. There was a lot of traffic but we managed _____ to the airport in time.
4. We were all afraid to speak. Nobody dared _____ anything.
5. It was a nice weather, so we decided _____ for a walk.
6. He's learning _____ (cook) Chinese food.
7. Do not forget _____ (let) the cat out tonight.
8. I'd love _____ (travel) around the world.
9. We stopped _____ (rest) because we were tired.
10. Max hopes _____ (go) to Bolivia next summer

✎ 2. Put the verbs to the right form:

1. I've never been to Australia, but I'd like _____ go there.
2. They don't allow people _____ (park) in front of the building.
3. The film was very sad. It made me _____ (cry).
4. I don't recommend _____ in that restaurant. The food it's terrible. (eat).
5. She said the letter was personal and wouldn't let me _____ (read) it.
6. Let me _____ (carry) your bag for you.
7. Pauline couldn't manage _____ (eat) all the ice cream.
8. She wishes _____ (come) with us.
9. She threatened _____ (tell) my parents.
10. I hate _____ (make) silly mistakes.

✎ 3. Put the verbs to the right form: - ing, infinitive.

1. Sometimes I regret _____ (move) to this part of the country.
2. I really miss (play) _____ tennis like I used to.
3. It's not worth (buy) _____ a second hand bicycle.
4. I promise I won't forget (feed) _____ the car.
5. If you got a headache, try (take) _____ an aspirin.
6. We've arranged (meet) _____ outside the school at 4.30.

7. Did you notice anyone (wait) _____ outside when you left?
8. Rustem pretended (not notice) _____ the “No parking” sign.
9. Aynur prefers (walk) _____ to work.
10. We enjoy (play) _____ piano.

TEST YOURSELF

1. Put the verb in right form:

It's nice ... work.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| a) to having finished | d) to have finished |
| b) had finished | e) being having |
| c) to have been finishing | finishing |

2. Find the Indefinite (Simple) from the verb "understand":

It's nice ... work.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| a) to having finished | d) to have finished |
| b) had finished | e) being having |
| c) to have been finishing | finishing |

3. Put the verb in the right form:

That dog seems ... (be) friendly.

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| a) to be | d) to being |
| b) to have | e) have being |
| c) be | |

4. Put the verb in the right form:

I promised ... (not be) late.

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| a) to not be. | d) not to be |
| b) to be not. | e) not having been |
| c) not to being | |

5. Бұл сөйлемде инфинитив:

To make mistakes is easy.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| a) анықтауыш | d) пысықтауыш |
| b) баяндауыш | e) бастауыш |
| c) толықтауыш | |

6. Бұл сөйлемде инфинитив:

I have phoned you to ask for advice.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| a) анықтауыш | d) пысықтауыш |
| b) баяндауыш | e) бастауыш |
| c) толықтауыш | |

7. Инфинитив бастауыш функциясын атқарып тұрған сөйлемді көрсетіңіз:

- a) It's too hot to wear coat.
- b) Riding a horse is very exiting.
- c) They seem to have been cleaning this house for a long time.
- d) I am glad to have seen him.
- e) To know our history well is necessary on the exam.

8. Бұл сөйлемде инфинитив:

I have phoned you to ask for advice.

a) анықтауыш

b) баяндауыш

c) толықтауыш

d) пысықтауыш

e) бастауыш

9. Бұл сөйлемде инфинитив:

He gave me a book to read.

a) анықтауыш

b) баяндауыш

c) толықтауыш

d) пысықтауыш

e) бастауыш

10. Инфинитив толықтауыш функциясын атқарып тұрған сөйлемді көрсетіңіз:

a) to have a lot of money is my dream

b) I hate making silly mistakes.

c) My duty is to tidy the house.

d) I want to drink a cup of tea.

e) Our target is to enter the university

11. Put the verb in the right form:

You always make me ... (laugh)

a) laughing

b) to laugh

c) laugh

d) laughed

e) to laughed

12. Put the verb in the right form:

I want you ... (tell) the truth.

a) to have told

b) telling

c) to tell

d) to telling

e) told

13. Put the verb in the right form:

I heard her ... (open) the door and go out.

a) to open

b) open

c) opened

d) opens

e) having open

14. Choose the right variant:

I bought this new software _____ Chinese.

a) for learning

b) learning

c) to learn

d) learned

e) to learning

15. Choose the right variant:

It isn't difficult _____ this textbook.

- a) understand
- b) in order to understand
- c) for understanding
- d) to understand
- e) understanding

16. Choose the right variant:

Are you ready? It's time _____ .

- a) for going
- b) to go
- c) going
- d) go
- e) to going

17. Choose the right variant:

I talked to the students about working harder but I couldn't _____ them to study.

- a) make
- b) get
- c) got
- d) let
- e) made

18. Choose the right variant:

My mother _____ do my homework before I go out.

- a) makes me
- b) helps me
- c) gets me
- d) lets me
- e) forces me

19. Choose the right variant:

Don't forget _____ home as soon as you arrive at your destination.

- a) to call
- b) calling
- c) having called
- d) to be called
- e) to have called

20. Choose the right variant:

The man _____ in the garden is listening to music.

- a) work
- b) working
- c) worked
- d) is working
- e) to work

UNIT XII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

ШАРТТЫ СӨЙЛЕМДЕР

Zero conditional

Қашанда шындықты білдіретін жағдайды көрсетеді.

Form:

If + present simple / present simple

- *If the sun shines the snow melts.*

First conditional

Болуы мүмкін шартты және оның келер шақтағы нәтижесін білдіреді. Іс-әрекет осы немесе келер шаққа қатысты.

Қазақ тілінде басыңқы және бағыныңқы сөйлемде келер шақ қолданылады. Ағылшын тілінде бағыныңқы сөйлемде (if clause) **present simple** қолданылады.

Form

If + present simple / will + simple form

- *If I don't eat breakfast, I will get hungry.*
- *If it rains, we will not go to the picnic.*
- *If we hurry, we 'll catch the bus.*

Басыңқы сөйлемде **will** көмекші етістігінің орнына модальді етістікті қолдануға болады.

Second conditional

Бұл шарттың орындалуы екіталай және шындыққа келмейтін іс-әрекетті білдіреді.

Form

If + past simple / would + infinitive

- *If I won the lottery I would buy an expensive car.*
- *If I had enough money, I would travel around the world.*
- *If I were you, I would accept their invitation.*

Есте сақтаңыз!

Were көмекші етістігі жекеше түрде де, көпше түрде де қолданыла береді.

- *If I was / were rich, I would spend all my time travelling.*
- *If he was / were here, he would help us. (but he is not here...)*

Third Conditional (unreal past situations)

Өткен уақытта болмай қалған жағдайларды сипаттау үшін қолданылады. Олар шын фактілерге қарама қайшылықты білдіреді.

Form

If + Past Perfect / would have + Past participle

- *If you had told me about the problem., I would have helped you. (But you didn't tell me...)*
- *They would have passed the exam. If they had studied (But they didn't study and failed the exam ...)*
- *If the weather had been nice yesterday, we would have gone to the zoo. (But the weather wasn't nice yesterday...)*

Mixed Conditional

Аралас шартты сөйлем

Кейде шартты сөйлемнің екі бөлігі де екі шаққа қатысты болуы мүмкін. Мұндай шартты сөйлемді **Mixed Conditional (Аралас шартты сөйлем)** деп атайды. Оның екі түрі бар:

а) Бірінші түрінде шартты сөйлем өткен шаққа қатысты іс-әрекетті білдіреді, ал оның нәтижесі өткен шаққа қатысты болады.

б) Екінші түрінде шартты сөйлем белгілі бір уақытты білдірмейді, ал оның нәтижесі өткен шаққа қатысты болады.

- *If you had taken your medicine yesterday, you would be well now.*

Wish, if, only

1) I wish... would ..., if only ... would

Бұл құрылым осы шақта болған іс-әрекетке көңілі толмауды, риза болмауды, болашақта оған өзгеріс енгізілгенін қалауды білдіреді.

- *I wish you would make your bed. (I want you to make your bed).*
- *I wish he would stop talking. (I want him to stop talking).*
- *If only it would stop raining. (I want it to stop raining).*

2) Wish, if only + Past Indefinite

Осы шаққа қатысты өкініш жайлы айтқанда қолданылады. (екінші шартты сөйлемнің түрі сияқты)

- *If you I could eat eggs. (I can't eat eggs).*
- *I wish I spoke French. (I don't speak French).*
- *If only I knew her phone number. (I don't know her phone number).*

Wish, if only + Past Perfect

Wish, if only + Past Perfect өткен шаққа қатысты өкінішті білдіру үшін қолданылады.

- *I wish I had saved some money . = I didn't save any money.*
- *I wish I had studied for the test. = I didn't study for the test.*

UNLESS

Unless = if ... not

- *I can't see if I don't wear glasses. = I can't see unless I wear glasses.*
- *Unless you work much harder, you won't pass the exam.*
- *He will go there if he isn't too busy. = He will go there unless he is too busy.*

Салыстыр if / in case

- *I'll bring in the washing if it rains. (I'll bring it in at the time it starts raining).*
- *I'll bring in the washing in case it rains. (I'll bring it now because it might rain later).*

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Underline the necessary word.

1. This time in six months. I'll be at university **unless** / **if** I decide to take a year off first.
2. We'd better leave early tomorrow **unless** / **in case** there's a lot of traffic when we get to Doncaster.
3. You can watch the film **as long as** / **in case** you promise to go straight to bed when it finishes.
4. Let's go to Mirabella's tonight **unless** / **if** you haven't been there before.
5. **Unless** / **so long as** I've still got my health, I don't mind how poor I am.
6. You'd better take a sweater with you know **if** / **in case** it gets cold tonight.
7. Do what you like **provided** / **unless** you don't make any noise.
8. I'm not going to worry **unless** / **as long as** she hasn't called by midnight.

✎ 2. Use the verbs in right forms.

Mr.Day: Can't you stop playing that computer? You're making an awful noise.

Adam: Well, if ... I don't practice ... (I/not practice), I won't pass my exam.

Mr.Day: But why at night? It's half past twelve. If (1) (you/play) it in the daytime, (2) (I / not / hear) you because I'd be at work. If (3) (you / tell) me about this trumpet when you first came here, (4) (I / not / let) you have the room. I'm afraid it's becoming a nuisance. If (5) (you / not / play) so loud, (6) (it / not / be) so bad.

Adam: I'm sorry, but you can't play a trumpet quietly.

Mr.Day: if (7) (I / realize) a year ago what you were going to do, then (8) (I / throw) you out long ago. If (9) (you / go) on making this noise at night, (9) (you / go) on making this noise at night, (10) (I / have) to complain to your college.

3 Underline the right verb in each sentence.

If the machine *stops / will stop*, you *press / will press* this button.

1. If you **help / helped** me with this exercise, I **will / would** do the same for you one day.
2. According to the timetable, if the train **leaves / left** on time, we **will / would** arrive on time.
3. If it **is / will be** fine tomorrow, we **go / will go** to the coast.
4. If we **find / found** taxi, we **will get / would get** there before the play starts.
5. It's quite simple really. If you **take / will take / took** these tablets every day, then you **lose / will lose / lost / would lose** weight.
6. I don't like this flat. I think **I am / I will be / I'd be** happier if I **live / will live / would live / lived** in a house in the country.
7. I don't know how to play baseball, but I'm sure that if **I will do / did, I play / will play / would play** a lot better than anyone in this awful team.
8. If **I phone / will phone / phoned** you tonight, **are you / will you be / would you be** in?
9. Why didn't you tell me? If you **told / had told** me, I **had helped / would have helped** you.
10. If Ann **wasn't driving / didn't drive / hadn't driven** so fast, her car **didn't crash / wouldn't crash / wouldn't have crashed** into a tree.
11. Let me give you some advice. If you **smoked / would smoke / had smoked less**, you **didn't feel / wouldn't feel / wouldn't have felt** so tired.
12. If you **invited / had invited** me last week, I was **able / had been able / would have been able** to come.
13. I'm sure your letter hasn't arrived yet. If it **came / had come** I'm sure I **noticed / had noticed / would have noticed** it.
14. We have a suggestion to make. How **do you feel / would you feel** if we **offered / would offer / had offered** you the job of assistant manager?
15. Terry never catches anything when he goes fishing. And if he **catches / caught / had caught** a fish, he **throws / would throw** it back.

TESTYOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant.

If it rains, we _____ at home.

- a) would say
- b) would have stayed
- c) stay
- d) will stay

2. Choose the right variant.

If you _____ harder, you will fail the exam

- a) would not try
- b) would not have tried
- c) do not try
- d) will not try

3. Choose the right variant.

If you behave yourself, you _____ with us to the concert.

- a) would come
- b) would have come
- c) can come
- d) will come

4. Choose the right variant.

If you do not work, you _____ holidays next week.

- a) would not have
- b) would have had
- c) do not have
- d) will not have

5. Choose the right variant.

If you _____ anything, ask me.

- a) would need
- b) would have need
- c) need
- d) will need

6. Choose the right variant.

If we are leaving soon, I _____ my coat.

- a) would get
- b) would have got
- c) get
- d) will get

7. Choose the right variant.

If I _____ the work by ten o'clock, I will be able to come.

- a) would finished
- b) would have finished
- c) have finished
- d) will finish

8. Choose the right variant.

If you have finished your homework, you _____ .

- a) would be able to go out
- b) would have gone out
- c) can go out
- d) will go out

9. Choose the right variant. Eat less or you _____ fat.

- a) would get
- b) would have got
- c) get
- d) will get

10. Choose the right variant.

If I _____ enough money, I would retire.

- a) would have
b) would have had
- c) had
d) will have

11. Choose the right variant.

If I lost my job, I _____ abroad for a while.

- a) would go
b) would have gone
- c) will go
d) might go

12. Choose the right variant.

If he were careful, he _____ things.

- a) would not break
b) would not have broken
c) did not break
- d) will not break

13. Choose the right variant.

If she were slimmer, she _____ much more attractive.

- a) would be
b) would have been
- c) was
d) will be

14. Choose the right variant.

If you _____ me more information, I will not be able to help you.

- a) would not give
b) would not have given
- c) do not give
d) will not give

15. Choose the right variant.

They _____ their plane if they had not woken up late.

- a) would not missed
b) would not have missed
- c) did not missed
d) will not miss

16. Choose the right variant.

I _____ to the party if I _____ about it.

- a) might have gone, knew
b) went, had known
- c) might have gone, had known
d) might go, had known

17. Choose the right variant.

I wish I _____ taller, because I am not very tall.

- a) were
b) would have been
- c) would be
d) will be

18. Choose the right variant. I wish I _____ on holiday with you, but I am busy tomorrow.

- a) would go
b) would have gone
- c) went
d) could go

UNIT XIII

CONSTRUCTIONS – КОНСТРУКЦИЯЛАР

“Used to do something” және “be used to doing something”

Ағылшын тілінде “used to do something” конструкциясын бұрын дағдылы болған, бірақ қазіргі уақытта жасалынбайтын іс-әрекетті білдіру үшін қолданылады.

- *We used to live in a small village, but now we live in Astana.*
- *I used to drive to work every day, but these days I usually go by bike.*

Болымсыз сөйлемде көмекші етістік **did** немесе **not** бөлшегі қолданылады.

- *We didn't use to have computers (=We never used to have computers.)*

► “**to be used to + V ing**” осы шақа қатысты «дағдылану» мағынасына сәйкес келеді...

- *I wasn't used to wearing glasses – it seemed very strange at first.*
- *I am used to getting up early.*

► ‘**to be used to + V ing**’ конструкциясына ‘**to get used to + V ing**’ синонимдес.

- *Zhanar is getting used to live in the city. (She is becoming accustomed to live in the city)*
- *They will soon get used to cooking their own meals.*

► ‘I'd like to do something’ сөз орамы

‘I'd like to do something’ сыпайы түрді білдіреді. Сұраулы сөйлемде “Would you like to + infinitive?”

- *Would you like to lay the table for me? – Yes, of course.*
- *I would like a brochure, please.*
- *We would like to order our drinks first.*
- *Would you like to visit the museum with us?*

► “**Suggest doing / suggest that you should do**” 2 жағдайда қолданылады:

- 1) Хабарлы сөйлемде 2 конструкцияда қолданылады.
- *Why don't we go for a walk?*

• *She suggested doing for a walk OR She suggested that we should go for a walk*

2) Біреуге кеңес беретін болған жағдайда конструкциясы қолданылады. Бұл жерде айтушы адам кеңеспен жүрмейді, іс-әрекет тек бір адаммен ғана іске асады.

• *Why don't buy some new clothes?*

He suggested that I should buy some new clothes. (NOT he suggested buying new clothes.)

► **“There is / there are” сөз орамдары**

Заттың, нәрсенің, атаудың белгілі бір жерде тұрғанын, бар екенін білдіру үшін жекеше түрде **‘there is’**, көпше түрде **‘there are’** қолданылады. **‘There is / there are’** сөз орамдары сөйлемнің басында қолданылады. **To be** етістігі шаққа байланысты өзгеріп отырады.

• *There is a lamp on the table. There is some water in the glass.*

• *There are lamps in the shop. There are four children in our family.*

• *There wasn't anybody in the room.*

• *Are there any flowers in your classroom?*

• *Is there any air in Mars?*

EXERCISES

☞ 1. Сөйлемде **There** және **be** қажетті формаларында қойыңыз.

1. There (isn't / aren't) any letters in the mail for you today.
2. There (isn't / aren't) any mail for you today.
3. There (is, are) a lot of problems in the world.
4. There (is, are) a hole in his sock.
5. There (is, are) over 600.000 kinds of insects in the world.
6. How many kinds of birds (is / are) there in the world?
7. Why (isn't / aren't) there a hospital close to those villages?
8. There (was, were) a terrible earthquake in Iran last year.
9. Why (is, are) there a shortage of available apartments for rent in this city at present?
10. There (is, are) more women than men in my office.
11. There (has been, have been) a line in front of that theater every night for the past two weeks.
12. How many wars do you suppose there (has been, have been) in the history of the world since the dawn of civilization?

☞ 2. Сөйлемдерге **used to** немесе **be used to** қойыңыз.

1. I (live) used to live in Jakarta, but now I live in Paris.
2. I (live) am used to living in Jakarta. I've lived here all my life.
3. Jane (work) _____ for the telephone company, but now she has a job at the post office.
4. This work doesn't bother me. I (work) _____ hard. I've worked hard all my life.
5. Dick (have) _____ mustache, but he doesn't anymore. He shaved it off, because his wife didn't like it. I (see, not) him without his mustache. He still looks strange to me.
6. When I was a child, I (think) _____ anyone over 40 was old. Of course, now that I'm middle aged, I agree with those who say "Life begins at 40."
7. It (take) _____ weeks or months to cross the Atlantic Ocean from Europe to the Americas, but now it takes only a matter of hours.
8. Even though Jason is only 12, he (fly) _____ on airplanes. His father is a pilot and has taken Jason with him in a plane many times.

9. When I was growing up, my mother often sent me to the neighborhood store to get something for her. And each time I went there, Mr.Ditmar, the owner, (give) _____ me a piece of candy.

10. Michael (take) _____ care of himself. He left home when he was 15 and has been on his own ever since.

TEST YOURSELF

1. Find the right variant of negative sentence.

We used to live in Taraz.

- a) We didn't used to live in Taraz. d) We had not live in Taraz.
b) We not use to live in Taraz. e) We used not to lived in Taraz.
c) We didn't use to live in Taraz.

Taraz.

2. Find the right variant of negative sentence.

I used to eat a lot of chocolate.

- a) I use not to eat a lot of chocolate. d) I didn't use to eat a lot of chocolate.
b) I didn't used to eat a lot of chocolate. e) I used not to eat a lot of chocolate.
c) I not use to eat a lot of chocolate.

3. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... some meat in the soup.

- a) are d) wasn't
b) be e) aren't
c) 's

4. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... a lot of peach trees in our garden.

- a) be d) are
b) am e) being
c) is

5. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... many polar bears in Arctic.

- a) was d) am
b) is e) are
c) be

6. Find the right variant of negative sentence.

My brother used to work as a shop assistant.

- a) My brother doesn't used to work as a shop assistant.
b) My brother used to didn't work as a shop assistant.
c) My brother didn't used to work as a shop assistant.
d) My brother not used to work as a shop assistant.
e) My brother don't used to work as a shop assistant.

7. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... some boys in the café.

- | | |
|--------|----------|
| a) is | d) isn't |
| b) are | e) are |
| c) was | |

8. Choose the right form of the verb.

... there any juice in the glass?

- | | |
|---------|--------|
| a) be | d) am |
| b) have | e) are |
| c) is | |

9. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... a lot of milk in the bottle. Give me a little!

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| a) was | d) were |
| b) has | e) been |
| c) is | |

10. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... some potatoes and carrots in the bag.

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| a) is | d) be |
| b) are | e) was |
| c) – | |

11. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... a pen and some erasers in the pencil-case

- | | |
|----------|--------|
| a) being | d) are |
| b) be | e) - |
| c) is | |

12. Choose the right form of the verb.

There ... little coffee in the cup.

- | | |
|---------|--------|
| a) is | d) be |
| b) were | e) are |
| c) have | |

13. Choose the right variant:

Why don't we go for a walk?

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| a) She suggested that he should go for a walk. | d) She promised going for a walk. |
| b) She suggested going for a walk. | e) She advised to go for a walk. |
| c) She denied going for a walk. | |

14. Choose the right variant:

Why don't you buy new trousers?

- a) He suggested buying new trousers.
b) He asked about trousers.
c) He refused to sell the trousers.
- d) His trousers were very cheap.
e) He suggested that I should buy new trousers.

15. Choose the right variant:

People used to be healthier than they are now.

- a) Do people use the health now?
b) Did people use the health?
c) Do people use to be healthy?
- d) Did people use to be healthier?
e) Were people healthier before?

16. Choose the right variant:

There ... many children in the yard two hours ago.

- a) been
b) were
c) are
- d) is
e) was

17. Choose the right variant:

When I was three, I ... to the kindergarten.

- a) to be used to
b) used go
c) am used to going
- d) used to go
e) using

18. Choose the right variant:

Tell me, please, what you'd like

- a) to be drinking
b) drinking
c) to drink
- d) drink
e) being drink

19. Choose the right variant:

There ... any soup left in the casserole.

- a) aren't
b) is
c) was
- d) much
e) wasn't

20. Choose the right variant:

Put on warm clothes. There ... a cold wind outside.

- a) is
b) was
c) had
- d) got
e) are

UNIT IVX

THE SYNTAX – СИНТАКСИС

General questions (Yes/No questions) – Жалпы сұрақ

Жалпы сұрақтар көмекші етістіктер немесе модальдік етістіктерден басталады.

a) Do you speak English? – Yes, I do / No, I don't.

b) Can you swim? – Yes, I can / No, I can't.

Жай сөйлем				Жалпы сөйлем			
Бастауыш	Баяндауыш		Толықтауыш және пысықтауыш	Етістік	Бастауыш	Баяндауыш	Толықтауыш және пысықтауыш
	Көмекші етістік немесе модальді етістік	Етістік					
He	is	reading	a book.	Is	he	reading	a book?
They	have	returned	from Astana	Have	they	returned	from Astana?
She	can	translate	the article	Can	she	translate	the article?
You	-	speak	Spanish	Do	you	speak	Spanish?
He	-	lives	in Almaty	Does	he	live	in Almaty?
She	-	finished	her translation in the evening	Did	she	finish	her translation in the evening?

Special questions (WH – questions) – Арнайы сұрақ

Арнайы сұрақ сұрау есімдіктері немесе үстеулерден басталып, сөйлеушілерге белгілі оқиғалар, құбылыстар туралы нақты және толық жауап, хабар алу керек болғанда қойылады.

Whom what, which, whose, when, why, where, how, how long, how big, how often, how much / how many есімдіктері арқылы жасалады.

a) What did the teacher read to the students yesterday?

b) How many books have you read?

Бастауыш	Баяндауыш	Толықтауыш	Пысықтауыш
<i>Who</i>	<i>is reading</i>	<i>a book</i>	<i>at the window?</i>
<i>What</i>	<i>is lying</i>		<i>on the table?</i>

► Who and what questions

Who және what сөйлемде бастауыш немесе толықтауыш функциясын атқарады. Егер who немесе what бастауыш болса, онда көмекші етістіктер қолданылмайды.

- *Who opened the window? (not Who did open the window?)*
- *What happened to your arm? (not What did happened to your arm?)*
- *Who phoned? (not Who did phone?)*

Егер сұраулы сөз толықтауыш функциясын атқарса, онда көмекші етістіктер қолданылады.

- *Who do you believe? – him or me?*
- *What did you have for breakfast?*
- *Who will you ring?*

Alex loves Ann but Ann loves Tom.

- *Who loves Ann? Аннаны кім сүйеді?*
- *Who does Ann love? Анна кімді сүйеді?*

My sister helped me and I helped my mother to lay the table.

- *Who helped you? – Саған кім көмектесті?*
- *Who did you help? Сен кімге көмектестің?*

Disjunctive Questions (Tag questions)- Анықтаушы сұрақ

Анықтаушы сұрақ екі бөліктен тұрады: хабарлы және сұраулы. Бұл сұрақтың түрі хабарлы бөліктегі берілген сұрақты растау қажет болғанда қойылады. Егер сұрақтың бірінші бөлігі хабарлы формада келсе, екінші бөлігі болымсыз формада келеді, егер бірінші бөлігі болымсыз формада келсе, екінші бөлігі хабарлы формада келеді. Сұрақтың екінші бөлігі көмекші етістік немесе модальды етістік арқылы жасалады. Сұраулы бөлігі жалпы сұраққа ұқсас болғандықтан «солай емес пе», «ия» жауапты қажет етеді.

- *You speak English, don't you?*
- *You haven't seen Joe, have you?*
- *The children can swim, can't they?*
- *I shouldn't laugh, should I?*
- *It will be dark soon, won't it?*
- *There was a mistake, wasn't there?*
- *You aren't ill, are you?*
- *It is cold, isn't it?*

I'm көмекші етістігінен **aren't I** қолданылады.

- *I'm right, aren't I?*
- *I'm late, aren't?*
- **БІПАҚ:** *I am not late, am I?*

Nobody, somebody, everybody және **no one** есімдіктерінен кейін **they** қолданылады.

- *Nobody phoned, did they?*
- *Everybody is here, aren't they?*
- *Nobody likes her, do they?*
- *Somebody has forgotten their coat, haven't they?*

Never, no, nobody, hardly, scarcely, little сөздерінен кейін бөлшекті сұрақ хабарлы сөйлемде қолданылады.

- *She never smiles, does she?*
- *She hardly spoke, did she?*
- *There is scarcely enough time, is there?*

Nothing есімдігі өзінен кейін **it** қосымшасын керек етеді.

- *Nothing can happen, can it?*
- *Nothing matters, does it?*

Let's shall we есімдігімен бірге қолданылады.

- *Let's go to the cinema, shall we?*

Alternative question – Балама сұрақ

Балама сұрақ негізінде екі жалпы сұрақтан тұрады. Мүмкін екі жауаптың бірін таңдауды қажет етеді, **or** жұрнағы арқылы жасалады. Сұрақтың екінші бөлігі әдетте толық емес болып қалады.

- *Do you like or (do you like) coffee? – I like tea.*
- *Is he studying or (is he) working? – He is studying.*
- *Do you want to see my mother or father? – I want to see your mother.*

Алтернативті сұрақ сұраулы сөзден басталады.

- *Which do you like: tea or coffee?*
- *What is he doing: sleeping or working?*

Imperative sentences - Бұйрықты сөйлем

Бұйрықты сөйлемдер бұйрық немесе өтінішті білдіреді.

- *Don't open the window!*
- *Close your dictionary!*
- *Don't be late!*
- *Sit down!*

► Exclamatory sentences – Лепті сөйлем

Егер айтылатын ой таңдануды, шатануды, наразылықты білдіретін болса, онда хабарлы, сұраулы, бұйрықты сөйлемдер лепті сөйлем бола алады.

- *Have you ever seen such weather!*

UNIT XV

WORD ORDER – СӨЗ ТӘРТІБІ

Ағылшын тілінде сөздер қатаң түрде тәртіппен тұрады.

Жай сөйлемнің сөз тәртібі:

1. Бастауыш (Subject)
2. Баяндауыш (Verb)
3. Толықтауыш (Object)
4. Пысықтауыш (Adverbial)

• *David* *bought* *a present* *yesterday.*
(Бастауыш) (баяндауыш) (толықтауыш) (пысықтауыш)

► Егер сөйлемде екі толықтауыш келсе (тура және жанама), онда тура толықтауыш етістіктен кейін келеді.

• *David bought a present*

► Жанама толықтауышы бар сөйлемде, тура толықтауыш жанама толықтауыштан кейін келеді.

• *David bought Lena (жанама толықтауыш) a present (тура толықтауыш) yesterday.*

► Көп етістіктер өзінен кейін жанама және тура толықтауышты керек етеді. Жанама толықтауыш тура толықтауыш пен етістіктің ортасында келеді.

- *David bought Lena a present.*
- *He gave his wife a camera for Christmas.*
- *Could you send me the bill?*

Жанама толықтауышты керек ететін етістіктер:

bring	lend	promise	take
buy	make	read	teach
cost	offer	refuse	tell
get	owe	send	wish
give	pass	show	write
leave	pay	sing	

► Қимыл-сын үстеуі әдетте етістіктен кейін келеді.

• *He drives slowly.*

- *The sun shines brightly.*

Егер етістік ауыспалы болса, онда үстеу толықтауыштан кейін немесе етістіктің алдында келеді.

- *Tom ate his breakfast quickly. NOT Tom ate quickly his breakfast.*

- *We played volleyball yesterday. NOT We played yesterday volleyball.*

- *We asked permission politely. NOT We politely asked permission.*

► **Мезгіл үстеулер:** *always, often, seldom, ever, never, just, usually, generally, sometimes, soon, once* әдетте етістіктің алдында келеді, бірақ егер көмекші етістік немесе модальды етістік келсе, онда үстеу көмекші және модальды етістіктерден кейін қойылады.

- *My friend **has** just given me the book.*
- *They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.*
- *I once went there with my sister.*
- *I really hate homework.*
- *He **is** always late.*
- *I **don't** often go out in the evening.*
- *The boss **is** usually in a bad temper.*
- *You **should** never take unnecessary risks.*
- *You **must** never get off the train when it is moving.*
- *I **can** always help you.*

► **Yet, still және already.**

Yet үстеуі (әлі де) сұраулы немесе болымсыз сөйлемнің соңында келеді.

- *Vicky has got a present, but she hasn't opened it yet.*
- *Wait a minute. I am not ready yet.*
- *Have you read the newspaper yet?*
- *Have you sent the letter yet?*

► Хабарлы сөйлемде **still** және **already** негізгі етістіктің алдында келеді, бірақ **am, is, are, have, has, don't** көмекші етістіктердің соңынан келеді.

- *Sarah isn't home yet. She is still at work.*

- *We wrote a month ago, and we are still waiting for a reply.*
- *There is no need to tell me. I already know.*
- *I am already exhausted.*

Сұраулы сөйлемде **still** және **already** бастауыштан кейін келеді.

- *Are you still waiting?*
- *Has Tom already been on holiday?*

► **Мекен үстеулер** әдетте сөйлемнің соңында келеді.

- *Is there a phone box nearby?*

► **Мезгіл үстеулер** сөйлемнің басында немесе соңында келеді.

- *Trevor wasn't very well last week.*
- *Last week we had nothing to do.*
- *Everyday we go jogging.*
- *There is a news summary every hour.*

Before, recently, lately сөйлемнің соңында келеді.

- *I haven't seen this film before.*

► **Very, quite**

Үстеуді немесе сын есімді білдіретін үстеу сөздер өздері нақтылайтын үстеудің немесе сын есімнің алдында келеді.

- *It is very cold today.*
- *The time passed quite quickly.*
- *This dress is absolutely marvelous.*
- *She doesn't want to marry him. She thinks he is too old.*

Enough (жеткілікті) сөзі сын есімнен немесе үстеуден кейін келеді.

- *The water isn't hot enough.*
- *This coat isn't warm enough for winter.*

Enough зат есімді айқындайды, бұл жағдайда **enough** зат есімнің алдында келеді.

Салыстырыңыз:

- *The coffee isn't strong enough.*
- *You didn't put enough coffee in.*

Too, either (сондай) үстеулері сөйлемнің соңында келеді.

- *I will be there too.*
- *I haven't seen this film either.*

Too (тіпті) сөзі өзі айқындайтын сөздің алдында келеді.

- *It is too dangerous to walk at this time of night.*
- *There are too many museums here to visit in a single day.*

► Сұраулы сөйлемдердегі сөз тәртібі.

Сұраулы сөйлемдерде көмекші етістік бастауыштың алдында келеді.

- *Have you received my letter of June 17? (not: You have received...)*
- *Did you like the concert?*

Арнаулы сұрақ сұраулы сөзден басталады, кейін көмекші етістік және бастауыш келеді.

- *What does the boss want?*
- *Where are the President and his family staying?*

Егер **who, which, what** сөздері бастауыш орнында келсе, онда көмекші етістік қолданылмайды.

- *Who left the door open?*
- *Which costs more – the blue one or the grey one?*
- *What happened?*

► Сұраулы сөйлемдердегі үстеулер.

- *Has Andrew always liked Jessica?*
- *Do you often go out in the evening?*

EXERCISES

1. Анықтаушы сұрақ қойыңыз.

1. Don't leave anything behind, will you?
2. David is bringing some ice-cream, _____ ?
3. Nobody knows who invented the wheel, _____ ?
4. Let's invite the Ahmetovs from next door, _____ ?
5. It's a nice day, _____ ?
6. I was really first, _____ ?
7. She doesn't look well, _____ ?
8. They look like big candles, _____ ?
9. There is a light out there, _____ ?
10. He's a lovely little boy, _____ ?

2. Read the situations and put the questions.

You want to know if it is raining. Is it raining?

You need to ask Polly where she lives. Where do you live?

1. You would like to ask Nancy where she bought her coat.
.....

2. You want to ask Susan if Amy can swim.

3. You want to ask Simon which band he likes best.
.....

4. On the phone you want to know who you are speaking to.
.....

5. You need to know how much video recorders cost.
.....

6. You are asking permission to come in.

7. You need to find out how long the journey takes.

8. You want to ask Adrain what he locked the door for.

9. You want to ask what happens next.

10. You want to suggest that you all go out together.
.....

3. Сөйлемдердегі қателерді түзетіңіз.

→ **Would like you to go sailing? Would you like to go sailing? ...**

1. Do you be a student here?

2. How many cakes have eaten you?

3. Enjoyed you your walk?

4. Where your friends have gone?
5. What kind music do you like?
6. Does Peter plays tennis?
7. About what are you talking?
8. What has it happened?

✎ 4. Put the sentences in right form.

1. I / love / really / these / trousers
2. is / rather / silly / this game
3. already / I've / paid / the bill
4. easily / Jonathan / passed / the test
5. a lot / cards / play / the children
6. enough / isn't / loud / the alarm
7. didn't / enough / sell / they / tickets
8. ask / many / questions / too / you
9. a member / any more / of the club / I'm / not
10. enough / it's / outside / to sit / warm

TEST YOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant.

He had no practice in composing music, _____ ?

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| a) didn't he | d) has he |
| b) had he | e) doesn't he |
| c) does he | |

2. Choose the right variant.

You have read all Pushkin's book, _____ ?

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| a) not you | d) aren't you |
| b) have you | e) isn't it |
| c) haven't you | |

3. Choose the right variant.

You have a bad headache, _____ ?

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| a) isn't it | d) haven't you |
| b) don't you | e) won't you |
| c) does it | |

4. Choose the right variant.

He never thought what might come out of it, _____ ?

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| a) does he | d) did he |
| b) hasn't he | e) won't he |
| c) didn't he | |

5. Choose the right variant.

She comes from the family of Donovan, _____ ?

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| a) hasn't he | d) doesn't she |
| b) didn't he | e) won't she |
| c) do you | |

6. Choose the right variant.

You have finished your work, _____ ?

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| a) didn't you | d) won't you |
| b) haven't you | e) have you |
| c) don't you | |

7. Choose the right variant.

He isn't a student, _____ he?

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| a) is | d) isn't |
| b) does | e) was |
| c) do | |

8. Choose the right variant.

There are so many people in the street, _____ ?

- a) are they
- b) are there
- c) aren't they
- d) aren't there
- e) isn't there

9. Choose the right variant.

You don't play the piano, _____ ?

- a) don't you
- b) do you
- c) doesn't you
- d) does it
- e) hasn't it

10. Choose the right variant.

This winter is not very cold, _____ ?

- a) isn't it
- b) is it
- c) does it
- d) won't it
- e) hasn't it

11. Choose the right variant.

They have to ask somebody else to help them, _____ ?

- a) haven't they
- b) have they
- c) do they
- d) don't they
- e) hasn't they

12. Choose the right variant.

There were many mistakes in your dictation, _____ ?

- a) weren't they
- b) were they
- c) aren't they
- d) weren't there
- e) aren't there

13. Choose the right variant.

He had lunch at home today, _____ ?

- a) hadn't he
- b) wasn't he
- c) did he
- d) didn't he
- e) had he

14. Choose the right variant.

You lived here 3 months ago, _____ ?

- a) don't you
- b) had you
- c) didn't you
- d) have you
- e) do you

15. Choose the right variant.

It isn't very early now, _____ ?

- a) isn't it
- b) it is
- c) doesn't it
- d) han't it
- e) is it

16. Choose the right variant.

Pete doesn't work hard, _____ ?

- a) is he
- b) he does
- c) does he
- d) he works
- e) doesn't he

17. Choose the right variant.

A sick man can't go out, can he?

- a) No, he can't.
- b) I didn't know.
- c) Yes, she could.
- d) No, he isn't.
- e) Yes, he could.

18. Choose the right variant.

Nothing can stop us now, ___?

- a) don't it
- b) doesn't it
- c) can't it
- d) can it
- e) does it

19. Choose the right variant:

You want to know who shouted "Fire":

- a) Who was shouting "Fire"?
- b) Who was near the fire?
- c) Whom did he shout at?
- d) Who did shout "Fire"?
- e) Who shouted "Fire"?

20. Choose the right variant:

The woman I saw was wearing a red sweater and black jeans.

- a) What is she wear?
- b) What was she wearing?
- c) What is she wearing?
- d) What has she wearing?
- e) What she wore?

UNIT XVI

WORD BUILDING – СӨЗ ЖАСАМ

Ағылшын тілінің сөздік құрамы өзінің даму барысында басқа тілдегідей үздіксіз өзгерісте болды. Мұндай өзгерістердің даму заңдылықтары оларға түрлі жаңа сөздердің қосылуы арқылы жасалады.

Бұлар екі түрлі жолмен жасалады:

- а) басқа тілдерден енген сөздермен толығыуы арқылы
- ә) сөз тудыру арқылы

► Ағылшын тілінде сөз жасам жүйесі әр түрлі жолдармен жасалады:

- 1) Сөз мүлдем өзгермейді
- 2) Сөз тудыру (қосымшалар, префикстер мен жұрнақтар жалғану арқылы)
- 3) Сөздегі екпіннің орны ауысуы арқылы
- 4) Түбір сөздегі дауысты және дауыссыздардың өзгеруі арқылы
- 5) Сөздің бірігуі (екі немесе бірнеше түбірдің бірігуі арқылы)

1. Сөз мүлдем өзгермейді.

Ағылшын тілінде кейбір сөздер айтылу мен жазылуы өзгермей зат есім, етістік, сын есім немесе етістік бола алады.

- *answer (жауап) - to answer (жауап беру)*
- *clean (таза) – to clean (тазалау)*
- *change (өзгеріс) – to change (өзгеру)*
- *dirty (лас) – to dirty (ластану)*

2. Зат есімдер етістіктерден сөздегі екпіннің орын ауыстыруы арқылы жасалады, зат есімдерде екпін бірінші буынға түссе, етістіктерде екінші буынға түседі.

- *increase - to increase*
- *export - to export*
- *import – to import*
- *transport – to transport*

3. Түбір сөздегі дауысты, дауыссыз дыбыстардың өзгеруі арқылы:

- *woman - women*
- *use - use*
- *advice - advise*
- *proof – prove*

► Префикстер мен жұрнақтардың жалғануы арқылы

Префикстер сөздің басында келеді де, жұрнақтар сөз соңында келеді. Префикстер сөздің мағынасын өзгертеді, бірақ сөз сол сөз табында қала береді. Жұрнақтар әдетте бір сөз табын, екінші сөз табына өзгертеді.

Жиі қолданылатын префикстер:

- **anti:** *cyclone – anticyclone; social – antisocial*
- **counter:** *action – counteraction; claim-counter-claim*

Сөзге болымсыз мағына беретін префикстер:

- **dis:** *honest – dishonest (арам), appear – disappear (жоғалу); like – dislike (жақсы көрмеу)*
- **in:** мына әріптердің алдында өзгереді: **l, r, m, p:** **in + l + ill;** **in + r = irr;** **in + m – imm;** **in + p = imp):** *capable – incapable (қабілеті жоқ); legal – illegal (заңсыз); responsible – irresponsible (жауапсыз)*
- **non:** *content – non-content (риза болмау), essential – non-essential (маңызсыз)*
- **un:** *pleasant – unpleasant (жайсыз), to lock – to unlock (кілттеу)*

Зат есімдер кейде сөздердің бірігуі арқылы жасалады. (Бұл жағдайда екінші қосынды зат есімнен болады)

- *black + board = blackboard (сынып тақтасы)*
- *time + table = timetable (сабақ кестесі)*
- *text + book = textbook (оқулық)*

► **Қарама-қарсы мағына беретін префикстер:**

- **de:** *merit-demerit*

«Жасау» деген мағына беретін шылау:

- **en:** *large – enlarge, circle – encircle; rich – enrich*

«Бұрынғы» деген мағына беретін шылау:

- **ex** – *champion – ex-champion, ex-president, ex-minister*

«Арасында, бірге» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **inter:** *action (іс-қимыл) – interaction (бірдеcin), town – intertown (қалааралық)*

«Дұрыс емес» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **mis:** *to understand – to misunderstand (дұрыс түсінбеу), to hear – to mishear (дұрыс естімеу)*

«Үстінде» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **over:** *to feed (тамақтандыру) – to overfeed (асыра тамақтандыру), to estimate (бағалау) – to overestimate (асыра бағалау)*

«Кейін» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **post:** *war (соғыс) – post war (соғыстан кейін)*

«Алдында, ертерек» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **pre:** *historic (тарихи) – prehistoric (тарихтан бұрын)*

«Тағы да, қайта» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **re:** *to open – to reopen (қайта ашу), to read – to reread (қайта оқу)*

«Астында» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **sub:** *marine – submarine (су асты)*

«Үстінде» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **super:** *natural – supernatural*

«Бір нәрсе арқылы» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **trans:** *to plant – to transplant*

«Ультра, жоғары» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **ultra:** *violet – ultra-violet (ультракүлгін), ultrashort (ультрақысқа)*

«Жеткіліксіз» деген мағына беретін шылаулар:

- **under:** *to value – to undervalue (бағаламау), to pay – to underpay (төмен жалақы төлеу)*

► Жиі қолданылатын жұрнақтар:

Зат есімнің жұрнақтары:

- - **ability, -ibility:** *probability, possibility.*
- - **age:** *leakage, marriage, passage.*
- - **al:** *arrival, approval.*
- - **ance, ence:** *importance, difference.*
- - **dom:** *freedom, boredom, kingdom, wisdom*
- - **ee:** *employee, interviewee, addressee*
- - **er, -or:** *buyer, teacher, worker, writer, director, inventor, translator, visitor.*
- - **hood:** *brotherhood, childhood, neighborhood*
- - **ian:** *historian, Russian, Hungarian*
- - **ion (-ation, -tion, -sion, -ssion):** *collection, production, connection, submission, production*
- - **ism:** *tourism*
- - **ist:** *terrorist, physicist, extremist, artist*
- - **ment:** *agreement, development, government, payment*
- - **ness:** *kindness, oldness, darkness, weakness*
- - **our:** *colour*
- - **ship:** *friendship, leadership*
- - **th:** *depth, growth*
- - **ty:** *safety*
- - **ure (-ture):** *creature, mixture, pressure, departure, pleasure*

► Сын есімнің жұрнақтары:

- - **able, -ible:** *eatable, changeable, convertible*
- - **al:** *central, cultural, formal, postal*
- - **ant, -ent:** *different, resistant*

- - **ary, - ory:** *secondary*
- - **en:** *wooden*
- - **ful:** *beautiful, careful, fruitful, useful*
- - **ic:** **heroic**
- - **ish:** *Scottish, reddish, Polish*
- - **ive:** *active, comparative, effective, talkative*
- - **less:** *hopeless, useless, homeless, helpless*
- - **ous:** *dangerous, famous, glorious*
- - **y:** *cloudy, dirty, sunny, rainy, frosty, windy, thirsty*

► **Етістіктің жұрнақтары:**

- -**ate, - ute:** *to indicate, to execute*
- -**en:** *to sharpen, to blacken, to shorten*
- - **ify:** **to purify, to simplify, to classify**
- - **ise, -ize:** **to characterize, to crystallize, to sympathize**

► **Үстеудің жұрнақтары:**

- - **ly:** *easily, firstly, daily, weekly*
- - **wards:** *homewards, northwards, backwards, upwards*

► **Екі немесе одан да көп сөздердің бірігуінен жасалған сөз жасам:**

- *Rain (жаңбыр) + bow (доға) = rainbow (кемпірқосақ)*
- *Snow (қар) + man (адам) = snowman (қар адамы)*
- *After (кейін) + noon (түс) = afternoon (түстен кейін)*
- *Fire (от) + place (орын) = fireplace (камин)*
- *Though (ой) + less (аздау) = thoughtless (қамсыз)*
- *White (ақ) + wash (жуу) = whitewash (әктеу)*

► **Кейбір сөздер дефис арқылы жасалады:**

- *Empty-headed (монас)*
- *Counting-out-rhyme (санамақ)*
- *Chimney-sweeper (мұрша тазалағыш)*
- *Merry-go-round (карусель)*
- *First-class (бірінші класс)*

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Зат есімдерді сын есімдерге ауыстырыңыз.

1. care - _____
2. cheer - _____
3. grass - _____
4. peace - _____
5. health - _____
6. noise - _____
7. hope - _____
8. smoke - _____
9. shame - _____
10. use - _____

✎ 2. Етістікті болымсыз түрге айналдырыңыз:

1. like - _____
2. spell - _____
3. agree - _____
4. believe - _____
5. understand - _____
6. cover - _____
7. dress - _____
8. connect - _____
9. please - _____
10. do - _____

✎ 3. Сын есімді болымсыз түрге айналдырыңыз:

1. able - _____
2. possible - _____
3. capable - _____
4. necessary - _____
5. patient - _____
6. proper - _____
7. correct - _____
8. conscious - _____
9. complete - _____
10. polite - _____

TEST YOURSELF

1. Жұрнақ жалғау арқылы сын есімге түрлендіріңіз:

Danger

a) –ly b) –ous c) –ish d) –ic e) –word

2. Префикс арқылы сын есімге түрлендіріңіз:

Known

a) un b) in c) mis d) dis e) non

3. Префикс арқылы жасалған етістікті табыңыз:

a) remember d) electrify

b) reconstruct e) locate

c) continue

4. Жұрнақ жалғау арқылы зат есімге түрлендіріңіз:

invent

a) er b) age c) hood d) tion e) or

5. Болымсыз мағыналы сын есімді табыңыз:

a) understandable d) regular

b) international e) illegal

c) note

6. Жұрнақ жалғау арқылы зат есімге түрлендіріңіз:

a) able b) –al c) –en d) –ish e) –age

7. Болымсыз мағыналы сын есімді табыңыз:

a) honest d) social

b) modest e) transplant

c) irregular

8. Жұрнаққа қарай отырып, дұрыс аудараманы табыңыз:

«Жеңіл»

a) easiness d) easier

b) easily e) easeless

c) easiest

9. “Equal” сөзінің қарама-қарсы мағынасын табыңыз:

a) disequal d) unequal

b) imequal e) ilequal

c) inequal

10. Префикс арқылы жасалған етістікті табыңыз:

a) make d) paint

b) resell e) speak

c) enjoy

11. Етістіктен жасалған зат есімді табыңыз:

- a) art
- b) winter
- c) friendship
- d) agreement
- e) kindness

12. Берілген қай сөз сөйлемде етістік:

- a) Did you like her **answer**?
- b) My brother hasn't received the **answer** yet.
- c) I'm waiting for the **answer**.
- d) It was a brilliant **answer**.
- e) He seldom can **answer** the question?

13. Берілген қай сөз сөйлемде етістік:

- a) All the **work** is very difficult.
- b) She fell asleep **working** on the computer.
- c) He usually **works** in his room.
- d) They employ a couple of young men to do the heavy **work**.
- e) They follow definite standards in their **work**.

14. Зат есімді табыңыз:

- a) kingdom
- b) seven
- c) unpleasant
- d) reopen
- e) historical

15. Болымсыз мағыналы сын есімді табыңыз:

- a) wooden
- b) active
- c) careful
- d) indefinite
- e) dirty

16. Етістіктен жасалған зат есімді табыңыз:

- a) computer
- b) production
- c) realism
- d) childhood
- e) historian

17. Жұрнақ жалғау арқылы зат есімге түрлендіріңіз:

weak

- a) ment
- b) er
- c) hood
- d) ness
- e) ion

18. Етістіктен жасалған зат есімді табыңыз:

- a) idealism
- b) wisdom
- c) Russian
- d) difference
- e) running

19. Дұрыс аударманы табыңыз:

Қайта құру

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| a) construction | d) underconstruction |
| b) unconstruction | e) overconstruction |
| c) reconstruction | |

20. Префикс арқылы жасалған етістікті табыңыз:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| a) watch | d) dislike |
| b) come | e) dance |
| c) remember | |

21. Жұрнақ жалғау арқылы зат есімге түрлендіріңіз:

- a) – ful b) – ous c) – ance d) – al e) - ish

22. Префикс арқылы жасалған етістікті табыңыз:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| a) eat | d) write |
| b) move | e) enlarge |
| c) location | |

23. Болымсыз мағыналы сын есімді табыңыз:

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| a) beautiful | d) comic |
| b) unthinkable | e) glorious |
| c) doubtful | |

24. Жұрнаққа қарай отырып, дұрыс аударманы табыңыз:

‘Басқару’

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| a) Governful | d) Ungoverned |
| b) Governess | e) Regovern. |
| c) Government | |

UNIT XVII

PREPOSITIONS - ДЕМЕУЛІКТЕР

Демеуліктер (предлогтар) зат есімнің немесе есімдіктің сөйлемдегі басқа сөздерге қарым-қатынасын білдіретін көмекші сөздер болып табылады. Ағылшын тілінде септік жалғауларының болмауына байланысты, сөйлемдегі сөздер тәртібі мен демеуліктер аса маңызды қызмет атқарады.

In, on, at (орын) демеуліктерімен кездесетін тұрақты сөз тіркестері:

In

- *In prison / hospital* – түрмеде / ауруханада
- *In the lesson* - сабақта
- *In a book / newspaper* – кітапта / газетте
- *In the photo / picture* – фотода / суретте
- *In the country* - елде
- *In the middle* - ортасында
- *In the back / front of a car* – артта / машинада
- *In a queue / line / row* – кезекте / ретте

On

- *On the platform* - платформада
- *On the farm* - фермада
- *On the page / map* - бетте / картада
- *On the screen* - экранда
- *On the island / beach / coast* – аралда / жағажайда / жағалауда
- *Drive on the right / left* – оңға қарай бұрылу / солға қарай бұрылу
- *On the back of an envelope* – конверттің сыртқы бетінде

At

- *At station / airport* – темір жол вокзалында / әуежайда
- *At home / work* – үйде / жұмыста
- *At school* – мектепте
- *At the top / bottom of hill* – төбеде / таудың етегінде
- *At the end of the corridor* – коридордың соңында

18.2 In, on, at

In

- *We bought the flat in 2003.*

In + жыл / ай / жыл мезгілі

- *In 2012*
- *In September*
- *In winter*
- *In the 21st century*

In + жұма / жұмадан көп

- *In the New-Year holiday*
- *In the summer term*

In + күннің бір бөлігі

- *In the morning*
- *In the evening*

Ескерту:

- *I woke up in the night (=in the middle of the night)*
- *I can't sleep at night (=when it is night)*

On

- The exam is on Monday.
- **On + жұманың бір күні / күннің жады**
- On Wednesday
- On 19 April
- On that day

On + нақты күн

- *On Christmas Day*
- *On Independence Day*

On + жұманың бір күні + күннің бір бөлігі

- On Friday morning
- On Tuesday evening
- It happened on Monday night

At

- *The film starts at seven thirty.*

At + уақыт (сағат) / тамақтанатын уақыт

- At three o'clock
- At lunch (-time)
- At that time

At the moment

Ескерту:

Every, last, next, this, tomorrow, yesterday сөздерінің алдында **in, on, at** демеуліктері қолданылмайды.

- *We go to Greece every summer*
- *I'll see you next Friday.*
- *My brother got married last year.*
- *I leave school this year.*
- *The party is tomorrow evening.*
- *The group arrived yesterday morning.*

In time or on time?

In time (for smth/ to do smth) = soon enough for... (уақытында болу, кешікпеу, белгілі оқиғада)

- *I must hurry. I want to get home **in time** to see the football match on television.*
- *I've sent Asem her birthday present. I hope it arrives **in time**.*

On time = punctual, not late (дәл уақытында)

- *Buses aren't on time like planes.*
- *The 11.35 train left on time. (=it left at 11.35)*

At the end or in the end?

At the end (something) = уақыттың аяқталуы немесе бір заттың соңы

- *I'm going away **at the end of August**.*
- *All the players shook hands **at the end of match**.*

In the end = ақырында, соңында

- *Erlan had a lot of problems with his car. **In the end** he sold it and bought another one.*
- *Rashid couldn't decide where to go for a holiday. He didn't go anywhere **in the end**.*

For, since, before демеуліктері **Present Perfect** шағында жиі қолданылады.

For іс-қимылдың қаншалықты уақыт созылғанын білдіреді.

• *I've been waiting for you forty minutes.* – Мен сені күткеніме 40 минут болды.

• *I've known him just for two days.* – Мені оны танысқаным 2 күн болды.

• *He has worked at the factory for three years.* – Ол фабрикада жұмыс жасағанына 3 жыл болды.

For – басқа шақтармен де қолданылады.

• *He worked at the factory for three years.* – Ол фабрикада 3 жыл жұмыс жасады.

• *I will stay abroad for a week.* – Мен шет елде 1 жұма боламын.

Since – іс-қимылдың басталған уақытын білдіреді.

• *I've been waiting since ten o'clock.* – Мен сағат 10-нан бері күтудемін.

• *I've known him since Monday.* – Мені оны дүйсенбіден бері танимын.

• *Mila has been living here since last year.* – Мила бұл жерде былтырдан бері тұрады.

Before – бұрын деген мағынаны білдіреді.

• *I have to finish my work before 5 o'clock.* Мен жұмысымды сағат беске дейін бітіруім керек.

• *Let's have a walk before breakfast.* – Таңғы асқа дейін қыдырып қайтайық.

• *I had passed my driving test three months before.* – Мен жүргізушілік тестін үш ай бұрын тапсырдым.

• *I have heard that before.* – Мен бұны бұрын естігенмін.

Әртүрлі демеуліктермен қолданылатын тұрақты сөз тіркестері:

• *After all* – ақыры соңында

• *Day after day (week after week)* – күннен күнге (апта сайын)

• *The day after tomorrow* – бүрсізүні

• *Long after* – көп уақыт өткен соң

- *At the age (of)* – ұлғайған шағында
- *At the beginning* - басында
- *At dinner (supper, tea)* – түскі ас уақытында, (кешкі аста, шайда)
- *At the end* - аяғында
- *At the expense (of)* – біреудің арқасында
- *At first* - бірінші
- *At the head (of)* - басқаруымен
- *At home* - үйде
- *At least* – дей тұрғанмен
- *At last* - соңында
- *At low / high price* – төмен / жоғары бағамен
- *At night* - түнде
- *At once* - лезде
- *At first sight* – бір көргеннен
- *At a time* – бір уақытта
- *The day before yesterday* – алдыңғы күні
- *Long before* – бұдан бұрын
- *Beyond belief* – мүмкін емес
- *Beyond doubt* – шүбә келтірмеу
- *Beyond hope* - үмітсіз
- *Beyond one's strength (power)* – шамадан тыс
- *By accident* - кенет
- *By heart* – жатқа
- *By land (sea, air)* – жерде, (суда, әуеде)
- *By mistake* – қателесіп
- *Step by step* – қадам қадаммен
- *By train (bus, ship)* – поезда, (автобуста, пароходта)
- *By the way* - дегенмен
- *Up and down* – жоғары және төмен
- *Upside down* – төңкеріліп
- *For ever* – мәңгі
- *For instance* - мысалы
- *For example* - мысалы
- *For this purpose* – сол мақсатпен
- *For the first (last) time* - алғашқы / соңғы рет
- *From the beginning to the end* – басынан аяғына дейін
- *From day to day* – күннен күнге
- *From time to time* – мезгілден мезгілге дейін

- ***From my (his) point of view*** – менің (оның) ойынша
- ***In addition to*** – толықтыру үшін
- ***In case of*** – егер
- ***In any case*** – қалай дегенмен де
- ***In demand*** - сұраныста
- ***In favor of*** – пайда үшін
- ***In front of*** – алға, қарама-қарсы
- ***In the East / West*** – шығыста, батыста
- ***A belief in*** - сену
- ***In general*** - жалпы
- ***In a loud voice*** – қатты дауыспен
- ***In the market*** – базарда
- ***In the meantime*** – сол уақытта
- ***In the morning (afternoon)*** – таңертең (күндіз)
- ***In the open air*** – аспанда
- ***In one's opinion*** – оның ойынша
- ***In pencil (pen)*** – қарандашпен (қаламмен)
- ***In conclusion*** - қорытынды
- ***In the direction*** – бағыт бойынша
- ***In sight*** – көз алдында
- ***In the spring ... (summer...)*** – көктемде, жазда
- ***In the street*** – көшеде
- ***In the sun*** - күнде
- ***In stead of*** - бірге
- ***In vain*** - текке
- ***In spite of*** - қарамастан
- ***Plenty of, a lot of*** – көп
- ***A number of*** - рет
- ***Of course*** - әрине
- ***It's kind / stupid of him*** – оның тарапынан бұл ізеттілік /

ақымақтық

- ***On an (the) average*** - орташа
- ***On behalf of*** – біреудің атынан
- ***On holiday*** – демалыста
- ***On business*** – іс-сапармен
- ***On condition that*** – шартпен, егер
- ***On the contrary*** - керісінше
- ***On demand*** - қажеттілікпен
- ***On foot*** - жаяу

- ***On the other hand*** – бір жағынан
- ***On purpose*** - әдейі
- ***On the right (left)*** – оңға, солға
- ***On sale*** - саттықта
- ***On the sea*** - теңізде
- ***On television (radio)*** – теледидардан, радиодан
- ***On the way*** – жолда
- ***On the whole*** - жалпы
- ***And so on*** – т.с.с.
- ***Later on*** - кейін
- ***Out of danger*** – қауіпсіз жерде
- ***Out of date*** – мерзімі өткен
- ***Out of necessity*** – қажеттілік бойынша
- ***Out of pity (envy)*** – аяныштан (қызғаныштан)
- ***Out of work*** - жұмыссыз
- ***All over the world*** – бүкіл дүние бойынша
- ***The lesson is over*** – сабақ аяқталды
- ***Round the corner*** - бұрышта
- ***All around*** - әр жерде
- ***To the end*** – соңына дейін
- ***To the right (left)*** – оңға (солға)
- ***Under the circumstance*** – бұл жағдайда
- ***Up-to-date*** - қазіргі
- ***Up to here*** - әлі күнге дейін (мекен)
- ***Up to now*** - әлі күнге дейін (мезгіл)
- ***The time's up*** – уақыт аяқталды
- ***What's up?*** – не болып қалды?
- ***Without doubt*** – күмәнсіз
- ***Without fail*** – міндетті түрде

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Choose the right variant:

1. Cat was leaning *by* / *against* the wall with its hand in / into his pockets.
2. I got *at* / *to* the station just in time to see my mother getting from / off the train.
3. The café is *among* / *between* the chemist's and the butcher's and *across* / *opposite* the library.
4. Merlan lives *at* / *in* Taraz, which is *at* / *in* the south of Kazakhstan.
5. Travelling *by* / *in* your own car is better than going *by* / *on* foot.
6. Maral had a hat *on* / *over* her head and a veil *above* / *over* her face.
7. We arrived *at* / *in* England *at* / *in* Gatwick Airport.
8. Terry isn't here. He's away *in business* / *on business*.
9. I can't disturb her now. She's *at bed* / *in bed*.
10. Madina always arrives exactly *in time* / *on time* for her lessons.

✎ 2. Put in, on, at.

- We spent the hole holiday ... on ... the beach.
1. I read about the pop festival a magazine.
 2. My parents' flat is the twenty-first floor.
 3. Melanie was holding a small bird her hands.
 4. I'll meet you the airport.
 5. Natasha now lives 32 the avenue.
 6. I was standing the counter in the baker's shop, waiting to be served.
 7. London is the Thames.
 8. There weren't many books the shelves.
 9. The passengers had to stand a queue.
 10. The woman sitting next to me left the train Chesterfield.

3. Choose the right preposition.

1. I'll send someone to call _____ the parcel on Thursday.
2. I came _____ one of your novels in a second-hand bookshop.
3. I'm not interested in buying anything. I'm just looking _____.
4. Don't you think the manager should deal _____ this problem.
5. George came _____ a lot of money when his uncle died.
6. I arrived _____ the station.
7. She is very good _____ languages.
8. Congratulations _____ your success.
9. The bus crashed _____ a tree.
10. It all depends _____ weather.
11. I divided the cake _____ three parts.
12. Why is she dressed _____ black?
13. I'm interested _____ most sports.
14. He was very kind _____ her.
15. I'm looking _____ a place to live.

TESTYOURSELF

1. Choose the right variant.

I remember that it was _____ my fifteenth birthday that she first put them _____ my hands.

- a) in / on
- b) on / into
- c) on / at
- d) into / on
- e) at / on

2. Choose the right variant.

I think we'll have read the article _____ 5 p.m. today.

- a) at
- b) to
- c) for
- d) by
- e) in

3. Choose the right variant.

It's necessary _____ him to do it _____ this year.

- a) of / in
- b) for / -
- c) to / during
- d) for / by
- e) to / -

4. Choose the right variant.

I wanted a book _____ Oscar Wilde and asked the librarian to show _____ me some _____ his books.

- a) by / - / of
- b) of / with / at
- c) of / to / by
- d) on / on / with
- e) by / to / by

5. Choose the right variant.

Take a piece _____ chalk and write the sentence _____ the blackboard.

- a) of / at
- b) of / of
- c) on / on
- d) of / in
- e) of / on

6. Choose the right variant.

_____ Monday morning I had been waiting _____ you _____ two hours but you didn't come.

- a) in / for / at
- b) on / - / for
- c) - / with / during
- d) on / for / for
- e) on / for / -

7. Choose the right variant.

What is happening _____ this picture?

- a) at
- b) from
- c) of
- d) in
- e) off

8. Choose the right variant.

Do you agree _____ her?

- a) to
- b) of
- c) for
- d) by
- e) with

9. Choose the right variant.

“____ your place I’d ask the boy to apologize ____ you,” Ann said
_____ her friend.

- a) on / with / in
- b) in / to / to
- c) at / to / for
- d) with / on / on
- e) up / with / to

10. I arrived _____ the station _____ a taxi.

- a) to / by
- b) to / on
- c) at / by
- d) at / in
- e) into / by

11. Choose the right variant.

A traveler who visits New York _____ the first time admires
_____ the new architecture.

- a) with / of
- b) of / of
- c) for / -
- d) in / with
- e) at / to

12. Choose the right variant.

The girl was dressed _____ the latest fashion but my clothes
were quite _____ fashion.

- a) after / out
- b) by / out
- c) in / out of
- d) for / off
- e) on / to

13. Choose the right variant.

He is waiting _____ us _____ .

- a) to / round
- b) over / above
- c) out of / from
- d) for / outside
- e) until since

14. Choose the right variant.

I looked ____ the box, but there was nothing _____ .

- a) inside / into
- b) into / inside
- c) around / of
- d) off / upon
- e) out of / inside

15. Choose the right variant.

I have read some articles _____ this subject _____ the books you gave me.

- a) about / for
- b) except / during
- c) beyond / between
- d) down / by
- e) on / besides

16. Choose the right variant.

We protested ____ delays _____ delivery _____ the goods.

- a) against / in / of
- b) across / over / after
- c) about / under / of
- d) against / of / in
- e) along / behind / beside

17. Choose the right variant.

I can see all the details; the boy lazy cat spread out ____ the fireplace, my aunt _____ one chimney corner.

- a) with / without
- b) in front of / in
- c) in / on
- d) within / beyond
- e) above / over

18. Choose the right variant.

My contract has been extended _____ another year.

- a) to
- b) during
- c) in
- d) for
- e) over

19. Choose the right variant.

Think _____ the end _____ every beginning.

- a) for / with
- b) to / for
- c) of / in
- d) with / with
- e) about / at

UNIT XVIII

THE LEXICOLOGY - ЛЕКСИКА

Фразалық етістіктер

Фразалық етістіктердің құрылысы мынадай: **етістік + демеуліктер (үстеу).**

For example: *come in, sit down, take off.*

Ағылшын тілінде фразалық етістіктер өте көп.

About, along, around, away, back, behind, by, down, forward, in, off, on, out, over, round, through, up демеуліктері фразалық етістіктер тобын құрайды.

Егер сіз әр сөздің мағынасын білсеңіз, фразалық етістіктерді түсіну өте оңай. Дегенмен кейбір етістіктер идиома болып келеді.

Тура мағына беретін фразалық етістіктер:

• *You may come in and sit down. The man in front turned round and stared at me.*

Идиомалық (фразеологиялық) мағынасы бар фразалық етістіктер:

- *Fortunately, the plan came off (=succeed)*
- *Why did you turn down such a good offer? (=refuse)*

Жиі қолданылатын фразалық етістіктер

find out = discover	bring in = introduce
go back = return	turn up = arrive, appear
go on = continue	go away = disappear
leave out = omit	fix up = arrange
send out = distribute	go off = explode
throw out = discard	make up = invent
give up = stop	come about = happen
hold up = delay	fall in = quarrel
put off = postpone	work out = calculate
put on = wear	turn on = connect
look for = seek	switch on = connect
try on = wear	look after = care
get up = get out of bed	fall away = disappear
come back = return	go in for = have smth as interest or

<p>give back = return smth to its owner stand up = be on your feet put up with = tolerate come across = meet by chance come in = become fashionable come along = arrive to look up = find information to go ahead = be in front of others to go on = continue come through = arrive by phone, radio look at = examine smth closely</p>	<p>hobby to get through = use up smth put down = make smb feel stupid look for = expect smth go out = leave give up = stop trying to do smth wash up = wash dishes after meal take off = leave a place look through = pretend not to see smb put on = wear look after = take care of smth</p>
--	---

Proverbs – Мақал мәтелдер

- **Knowledge is power** – *Білікті бірді жығады, білімді мыңды жығады.*
- **There is no royal road to learning** – *Оқу инемен құдық қазғандай*
- **No grass grows on his heel** – *Еңбекпен ер көгерер.*
- **Better late than never** – *Ештен кеш жақсы.*
- **East or West home is best** – *Өз үйім - өлең төсегім.*
- **Experience is the mother of wisdom** - *Көр жасағаннан сұрама, көп көргеннен сұра.*
- **Many men many minds** – *Қанша адам болса, сонша пікір.*
- **Good health is above wealth** – *Денсаулық зор байлық*
- **He who laughs at crooked man should walk very straight** – *Күлме досқа, келер басқа.*
- **No gain without pain** – *Бейнетсіз зейнет жоқ.*
- **Patience is a virtue** – *Сабыр түбі – сары алтын.*
- **Practice makes perfect** – *Көш жүрсе түзеледі.*
- **Promise is a debt** – *Ер жігіттің екі сөйлегені - өлгені.*
- **Two heads are better than one** – *Елмен көрген еленбес.*
- **Look before you leap** – *Жеті рет өлшеп, бір рет кес.*
- **Let sleeping dogs lie** – *Жатқан жыланның құйрығын баспа.*
- **Many words hurt more than swords** – *Сөз сүйектен, таяқ еттен өтеді.*
- **Seeing is believing** – *Естігенге емес, көргенге сен.*

• **Nothing venture, nothing have** - *Әрекет болмай, берекет болмас.*

• **Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today** - *Бүгін бітер істі ертеңге қалдырма.*

• **Never say die** – *Үмітсіз шайтан*

• **One man does not make a team** – *Жалғыздың үні шықпас, жаяудың шақы шықпас.*

• **Where there is a will there is a way** – *Іздеген мұратына жетеді*

• **All is not gold that glitters** – *Жылтыруықтың бәрі алтын емес*

• **All bread is not baked in one oven** – *Бес саусақ бірдей емес*

• **Good beginning makes good ending** – *Істің басы байлы болса, аяғы сайлы болар*

• **Be slow to promise and quick to perform** – *Уәде бердің айтыс жоқ, қолдан бердің қайтыс жоқ.*

• **Better be born lucky than rich** – *Таудай талап бергенше, бармақтай бақ бер.*

• **Bird in the hand is worth two in the bush** – *Аспандағы сұңқардан қолымдағы тұрымтай жақсы*

• **Blind men can judge no colours** – *Соқыр тауыққа бәрі бидай*

• **By doing nothing we learn to do ill** – *Тамағы тоқтық, жұмысы жоқтық, аздырар адам баласын*

• **Clothes make the man** – *Адамның көркі шүберек*

• **Custom is second nature** - *Ауру қалса да, әдет қалмайды.*

• **Cut your coat according to your cloth** – *Көрпеңе қарай көсіл*

• **Curiosity killed the cat** – *Тек жүрсең – тоқ жүресің.*

• **Curses like chickens come home to roast.** – *Біреуге ор қазба өзің түсерсің*

• **First think, then speak** – *Ойланбай сөйлеген ауырмай өледі*

• **Friend in need is a friend indeed** – *Жоқ кездегі дос – дос, бар кездегі дос – бос*

• **Friend's frown is better than a foe's smile** – *Дос жылатып айтады, дұшпан күлдіріп айтады*

• **Handsome is that handsome does** – *Тәні сұлу сұлу емес, жаны сұлу – сұлу*

• **Silence is golden, speech is silver** – *Көп сөз – қола, аз сөз – алтын*

• **There is reason in all things** – *Жел тұрмаса шөптің басы қимылдамайды.*

• **Strike while the iron is hot** – *Темірді қызған кезде соқ.*

EXERCISES

☞ 1. Берілген сөйлемдерді төмендегі сөздермен толықтырыңыз.

Across, against, for, in, into, on, round, to, up, with

1. I'll send someone to call ... the parcel on Thursday.
2. You'll have to work hard to keep with the rest of the class.
3. Jean didn't expect to come up ... such difficulties.
4. It's not fair. You're always picking ... me.
5. Terry sang the first verse and then everyone joined
6. I came ... one of your novels in a second – hand bookshop.
7. I'm not interested in buying anything. I'm just looking
8. Don't you think the manager should deal ... this problem?
9. George came ... a lot of money when his uncle died.
10. You look very guilty! What have you been getting up ... ?

☞ 2. Курсивпен берілген сөздерді фразалық етістікке айналдырыңыз.

1. I think that you *invented* this story. _____ .
2. When do you think your book will be *published*? _____
3. I think that the weather is *improving*. _____
4. I can't *find an answer* to this problem. _____
5. *Be careful!* You are going to fall. _____
6. I'm afraid, William tends to *stop trying*. _____
7. The plane is going to *leave the ground*. _____
8. I think that Sue and Neil have *quarreled*. _____
9. She longed to visit the house in Artvin, where she was *brought up* as a child. _____
10. The car suddenly stopped, and I realized that we *had no more* petrol. _____

☞ 3. Фразалық етістікті жай етістікке айналдырыңыз.

1. At half past six, the alarm clock *went off*. _____
2. Jim is very good at *talking off* his teacher. _____
3. Please don't *bring up* that subject again. _____
4. There is one small matter I would like to *clear up*. _____
5. Jean is really good at *picking up* languages. _____
6. All my old clothes need *taking up*. _____

7. The whole cost of the equipment *works out* at £450.

8. Jackie *broke down* and everyone felt sorry for her.

9. Although none of us wanted to go on picnic, it *turned out* to be quite enjoyable. _____

10. John's finally *got over* his operation now and is back at work.

🦋 4. Қазақша баламасын беріңіз.

1. Handsome is that handsome does. _____

2. Business before pleasure. _____

3. Better late than never. _____

4. Half a loaf is better than no bread. _____

5. So many men, so many minds. _____

6. Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today. _____

7. Everything is good in it's season. _____

8. When the cat is away, the mice will play. _____

9. Something is better than nothing. _____

10. Live and learn. _____

TESTYOURSELF

1. End the proverb.

Last, but not

- a) small
- b) big
- c) least
- d) lost
- e) best

2. End the proverb.

All is well that

- a) ... you can do today.
- b) ... before pleasure.
- c) ... you see.
- d) ... ends well.
- e) ... makes bell.

3. End the proverb.

Health is ...

- a) ... money
- b) ... half a dollar
- c) ... light
- d) ... better than wealth
- e) ... hospital

4. End the proverb.

Every country has its

- a) keys
- b) president
- c) knight
- d) customs
- e) culture

5. End the proverb.

Wear the old coat

- a) ... and buy the new book.
- b) ... than never.
- c) ... and new boots.
- d) ... and eat chips.
- e) and have a pleasure.

6. Мақалдың дұрыс баламасын табыңыз.

Өз үйім - өлең төсегім.

- a) Guests come with eating.
- b) A man can sit but once.
- c) East or West, home is best.
- d) Custom is a second nature.
- e) A cat in gloves catches no mice.

7. End the proverb.

A fly in the

- a) ... words.
- b) ... good as a rest.
- c) ... home is best.
- d) ... ointment.
- e) ... I'll scratch yours.

8. End the proverb.

Be slow to promise and quick to

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| a) ... advise | d) ... perform |
| b) ... talk | e) ... run |
| c) ... sleep | |

9. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

Out of sight, out of ...

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| a) mind | d) hair |
| b) heart | e) nose |
| c) kidney | |

10. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

Without a ...

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| a) money | d) stitch |
| b) problem | e) mouth |
| c) hitch | |

11. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

A storm in a

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| a) street | d) sea |
| b) mouth | e) jar |
| c) tea-cup | |

12. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

No ... without pain.

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| a) health | d) life |
| b) gain | e) illness |
| c) lesson | |

13. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

To make both ends

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| a) meet | d) sleep |
| b) sharp | e) finish |
| c) go apart | |

14. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

Every dog has his

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| a) tail | d) plate |
| b) day | e) kennel |
| c) owner | |

15. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

... is the sports of kings.

a) Volleyball

b) Art

c) Army

d) War

e) Golf

16. Фразеологизмді аяқтаңыз.

A bird may be known by its

a) nest

b) feather

c) beak

d) leap

e) song

17. Фразалық етістігі бар сөйлемді табыңыз:

a) There are many clouds in
the sky.

b) The sun is setting.

c) He was born in France.

d) May I come in?

e) I'm going to buy a pet.

18. Фразалық етістігі бар сөйлемді табыңыз:

a) She doesn't study anywhere.

b) They do voluntary work.

c) You have to take off your
coat when you come in.

d) Children have already
fallen asleep.

e) They took him to the
hospital right away.

19. Аударыңыз:

«Спортпен айналысу»:

a) to be good at sport

b) to make sport

c) to do sport

d) to go in for sport

e) to have sport

20. «Лақтыру» деген мағына беретін фразалық етістікті
табыңыз :

a) to give across

b) to give on

c) to give away

d) to give for

e) to give up

20. Фразалық етістігі бар сөйлемді табыңыз:

a) She has put too much salt
into the soup.

b) Put the book into your bag.

c) In winter people put on
warm clothes not to get cold.

d) Don't put your hands
on the table.

e) Put some sugar into
your tea.

21. Дұрыс фразалық етістікті табыңыз:

The teacher told us not to ... him for a minute.

- a) look to
- b) look on
- c) look up
- d) look for
- e) look at

22. Фразалық етістігі бар сөйлемді табыңыз:

- a) I have to look after my little brother.
- b) I don't like guests.
- c) We will have new uniform next year.
- d) Don't touch my piece of cake.
- e) When do you usually go to school?

23. Дұрыс фразалық етістікті табыңыз:

Could you please ... the light. It's too dark here.

- a) turn on
- b) turn off
- c) turn left
- d) turn over
- e) turn up

24. Дұрыс жауапты табыңыз:

In case you don't know any word, you may ... it ... in the dictionary.

- a) look on
- b) look up
- c) look
- d) look for
- e) look from

UNIT XIX

SPELLING PROBLEMS – ОРФОГРАФИЯ

► - *ful* жұрнағы бір *l* әріпімен жазылады:

- *useful*
- *helpful*

► Сын есімнен үстеу жасалғанда *l* әрпі екі еселенеді:

- *usefully*
- *helpfully*

► Бір буынды сөздерге - *ing*, *-ed*, *-er* жалғанса, дауыссыз дыбыс екі еселенеді:

- *swim - swimming*
- *thin - thinner*
- *fit – fitter*

► Екі буынды сөздердің екінші буынына екпін түсетін болса, онда соңғы дыбыс екі еселенеді:

- *prefer – preferred*

► Егер етістік – *ie* аяқталса, онда – *ie* әрпі – *y* әрпіне айналады да, - *ing* жалғауы жалғанады. Ал – *ed* жалғанатын болса, онда тек – *d* жалғанады.

- *die – dying - died*
- *lie – lying – lied*

► - *Ough*-қа аяқталатын сөздер:

Now сөзі сияқты оқылады:

- *plough*
- *bough*

Cuff сөзі сияқты оқылады:

- *enough*
- *rough*
- *tough*

Toe сөзі сияқты оқылады:

- *tough*
- *dough*

Off сөзі сияқты оқылады:

- *cough*

► **T** әрпі оқылмайтын сөздер:

- *listen*
- *whistle*
- *hasten, fasten*
- *castle*
- *glisten*
- *bristle*
- *mistletoe*

► **B** әрпі оқылмайтын сөздер:

- *Plumber, thumb, comb, lamb, tomb*
- *Debt, doubt, subtle, dumb*

EXERCISES

✎ 1. Open the brackets.

• *supply (ing) – supplying*

1. destroy (ed) - _____
2. apply (ing) - _____
3. beauty (ful) - _____
4. regretful (y) - _____
5. hopeful (y) - _____

✎ 2. Fix the spelling errors.

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. diferent | 6. dauhgter |
| 2. loverly | 7. milkmiad |
| 3. holliday | 8. introdecu |
| 4. lugage | 9. montauni |
| 5. sincerely | 10. exbihition |

✎ 3. Put the end to the following verbs – *ind* and *- ed*:

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. try: trying, tried | 6. offer: _____ |
| 2. boil: _____ | 7. prefer: _____ |
| 3. stay: _____ | 8. gain: _____ |
| 4. type: _____ | 9. study: _____ |
| 5. tap: _____ | 10. die: _____ |

TESTYOURSELF

1. Compile the word from the following letters:

f, w, a, u, l.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| a) waulf | d) uflaw |
| b) faluw | e) aulwf |
| c) awful | |

2. Choose the correctly written word:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| a) friendship | d) frendship |
| b) freindchip | e) championship |
| c) frienchip | |

3. The correctly written noun:

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| a) doores | d) flowers |
| b) bottles | e) haes |
| c) cutain | |

4. Compile the word from the following letters:

a, u, r, e, b, u.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| a) uraebu | d) urebau |
| b) bureau | e) eaubru |
| c) ruubea | |

5. Choose the correctly written word:

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| a) intresting | d) interesting |
| b) itresting | e) intertin |
| c) interting | |

6. Compile the word from the following letters:

w, r, t, e, a, i.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| a) writea | d) eawrit |
| b) teawir | e) waiter |
| c) reawit | |

7. Choose the correctly written word:

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| a) honest | d) unest |
| b) onist | e) honst |
| c) honist | |

8. Choose the correctly written word:

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| a) development | d) mentdevelop |
| b) development | e) development |
| c) vedelopment | |

9. Compile the word from the following letters:

p, p, o, o, t, t, r n, i, y, u.

a) nuiptortyo

b) porptuinoty

c) opportunity

d) unitytoporp

e) optuiportty

10. Choose the correctly written word:

a) pretty

b) petty

APPENDIX – I

WORD-FORMATION SUFFIXES

СӨЗ ТУДЫРУШЫ ЖҰРНАҚТАР

I. ЗАТ ЕСІМ ТУДЫРАТЫН ЖҰРНАҚТАР

1.1. Етістіктен зат есім тудыратын жұрнақтар

- er, - or			
to direct	жетекшілік жасау	director	директор
to inspect	тексеру	inspector	инспектор
to invent	өнер табу	inventor	өнер тапқыш
to produce	өндіру	producer	өндіруші
to sell	сату	seller	сатушы
to supple	сату	supplier	жеткізуші
to read	оқу	reader	оқырман
to teach	оқыту	teacher	оқытушы
to translate	аудару	translator	аудармашы
to visit	келу	visitor	келуші
to work	жұмыс істеу	worker	жұмысшы
-ee			
to trust	сену	trustee	сенім
-ition (-ation, - tion, - sion, -ssion)			
to collect	жинау	collection	коллекция
to connect	қосу	connection	байланыс
to dictate	айтып жаздыру	dictation	диктант
to introduce	енгізу	introduction	кіріспе
to produce	шығару, өндіру	production	өндіріс
to transmit	жеткізу	transmission	хабар, жеткізуші
-ment			
to agree	келісу	agreement	келісім
to develop	дамыту	development	даму
to govern	басқару	government	басқарма
to pay	төлеу	payment	төлем
-ure			
to depart	кету	departure	кету
to press	басу	pressure	қысым

1.2. Сын есімнен зат есім тудыратын жұрнақтар

-ance, ence жұрнағы – ant, -ent			
important	маңызды	importance	маңыздылық
different	әр түрлі	difference	айырмашылық
insistent	қайсар	insistence	қайсарлық
-dom жұрнағы			
free	бос	freedom	еркіндік
wise	данышпан	wisdom	даналық
-ness жұрнағы			
cold	суық	coldness	суықтық
dark	қараңғы	darkness	қараңғылық
kind	мейірімді	kindness	мейірімділік
weak	әлсіз	weakness	әлсіздік
-ity жұрнағы			
active	белсенді	activity	белсенділік
able	қабілетті	ability	қабілеттілік
simple	қарапайым	simplicity	қарапайымдылық
possible	мүмкін	possibility	мүмкіндік

1.3. Зат есімнен зат есім тудыратын жұрнақтар

-hood жұрнағы			
brother	бауыр	brotherhood	бауырластық
child	бала	childhood	балалық шақ
man	ер адам	manhood	ерлік
mother	ана, шеше	motherhood	аналық
neighbour	көрші	neighborhood	көршілестік
-ship жұрнағы			
dictator	диктатор	dictatorship	диктатура
friend	жолдас	friendship	достық
leader	көсем	leadership	басшылық
member	мүше	membership	мүшелік

II. СЫН ЕСІМ ТУДЫРАТЫН ЖҰРНАҚТАР

1.1. Етістіктен сын есім тудыратын жұрнақтар

-able, -ible			
to change	өзгеру	changeable	өзгермелі
to compare	салыстыру	comparable	салыстырмалы
to convert	айналдыру	convertible	айналған
to eat	жеу	eatable	жеуге жараттын
-ant, -ent			
to differ	өзгешелену	different	әр түрлі
to insist	көндіру	insistent	қайсар
to resist	қарсылық көрсету	resistant	кедергі, қарсылық
- (at) ive			
to act	істеу	active	іскер
to compare	салыстыру	comparative	салыстырмалы
to restrict	шек қою	restrictive	шектегіш
to talk	сөйлесу	talkative	сөзшең
to effect	әсер ету	effective	нәтижелі

2.2. Зат есімнен сын есім тудыратын жұрнақтар

- al			
central	ортасы	central	орталық
culture	мәдениет	cultural	мәдениетті
form	форма	formal	формальды
post	почта	postal	почталық
-ful			
beauty	әдемілік	beautiful	әдемі
care	қамқор	careful	қамқоршы
doubt	күдік	doubtful	күмәнді
use	пайда	useful	пайдалы
- less			
hope	үміт	hopeless	үмітсіз
use	пайда	useless	пайдасыз
home	үй	homeless	үйсіз
help	көмек	helpless	көмексіз
-ous			
fame	атақ	famous	атақты
danger	қауіп	dangerous	қауіпті

courage glory	батылдық атақ	courageous glorious	батыл атақты
-y			
cloud fog rain	бұлт тұман жаңбыр	cloudy foggy rainy	бұлтты тұманды жаңбырлы
-ish			
red pole swede	қызыл Поляк Швед	Reddish polish swedish	қызылдау Польшалық Шведтік
-en			
wood gold wool	ағаш алтын жүн	wooden golden woolen	ағаштан жасалған алтын жүннен жасалған

III. ЕТІСТІК ТУДЫРАТЫН ЖҰРНАҚТАР

3.1. Сын есімнен етістік тудыратын жұрнақтар

-en жұрнағы			
black	қара	to blacken	қаралау
sharp	өткір	to sharpen	қайрау
short	қысқа	to shorten	қысқарту
wide	кең	to widen	кеңейту
-fy жұрнағы			
false	жалған	to falsify	бұрмалау
simple	қарпайым	to simplify	қарпайым болу
pure	таза	to purify	тазалау

3.2. Зат есімнен етістік тудыратын жұрнақтар

-ize жұрнағы			
character	мінез	to characterize	мінездеме беру
crystal	кристалл	to crystallize	кристалдану
sympathy	ниет білдіруші (симпатия)	to sympathize	ниет білдіру
-en жұрнағы			
strength	күш	to strengthen	күшейту

IV. ҮСТЕУ ТУДЫРАТЫН ЖҰРНАҚТАР

4.1. Сын есімнен тудыратын жұрнақтар

- ly			
nice	жақсы	nicely	жақсырақ
bad	жаман	badly	жаманырақ
slow	ақырын	slowly	ақырынырақ
bright	жарық	brightly	жарықтау
brave	батыр	bravely	батырырақ
hard	қатты	hardly	қатты
angry	ашуланшақ	angrily	ашулы

APPENDIX – 2

PUNCTUATION – ПУНКТУАЦІЯ

A. Full stop (.), question mark (?) and exclamation mark (!)

A sentence ends with one of these punctuation marks.

Full stop: *It's cold today.*

The office was closed.

Please be careful.

Question mark: *Who's that?*

Did you see the show?

Could you wait, please?

Exclamation mark: *Oh, no! I don't believe it!*

* In the US a full stop is called a “period”.

B Semi-colon (;)

We can use a semi-colon between two separate statements which are linked in meaning.

Melanie is a very kind person; she visits David in hospital every day.

We could also use a full stop here.

C Colon (:)

We can use a colon before an explanation or before a list.

Vicky felt nervous: she hated the dark. There wasn't much in the fridge: a couple of sausages, some butter, and half a bottle of milk.

D Dash (-)

A dash is rather informal. It is sometimes used instead of a colon or a semi-colon.

I'm having a great time – there's lots to do here. Vicky felt nervous – she hated the dark.

E Comma (,)

We often use a comma when we link two statements with **and**, **but** or **or**.

Daniel was tired, and his feet were hurting. It's a really good camera, but I can't afford it. Note the two subjects in each sentence: *Daniel ... his feet and It ... I.* When there is only one subject, we do not use a comma.

Daniel sat down and took his shoes off.

We can also use a comma when a sentence has a linking word like **when** or **although**.

When the office is busy, Sarah has to work late. For commas with relative clauses.

Sometimes a comma can separate off an adverb or a phrase.

Sarah, unfortunately, has to work late. On busy days, Sarah has to work late. Here the commas separate off *on busy days* and *unfortunately*.

The rules about commas are not very exact. In general, commas are more likely around longer phrases. With a short phrase there is often no comma. *On busy days Sarah has to work late. Sometimes she was to work late.*

It is less usual to separate off something at the end of the sentence.

Sarah has to work late when the office is busy. She stayed late to get the work done. We do not usually put a comma before **to** expressing purpose.

We also use commas in a list of more than two. The last two are linked by and, often without a comma.

I went out with Rachel, Vicky, Emma and Matthew.

F Quotation marks (“”)

We put direct speech in quotation marks.

Laura said, “You haven’t put those shelves up yet” “I haven’t had time / replied Trevor.

We normally use a comma to separate the direct speech from the rest of the sentence. The comma comes before the quotation mark. Quotation marks are also called ‘quotes’ or ‘inverted commas’.

Double quotation marks are sometimes used. *Laura said, “You haven’t put those shelves up yet.”*

We can put quotation marks around titles.

Do you watch that American comedy series called “Roseanne”?

We often use quotation marks when we mention a word or phrase.

What does ‘punctuation’ mean? Rap music is also called ‘hip hop’.

G Hyphen (-)

We sometimes use hyphens in these structures.

Compound noun: *eating ice-cream*

Compound expression before a noun: *an oven-ready meal*

Noun formed from a phrasal verb: *ready for take-off*

Noun + **ing** form: *interested in rock-climbing*

Before the last word of a compound number: *a hundred and twenty-six people*

After some prefixes: *anti-aircraft* guns

The rules about hyphens are not very exact. For example, you may see a compound noun written as **phonecard**, **phone-card** or **phone card**. Hyphens are not very frequent in British English, and they are used even less in American English. If you are unsure, it is usually safer to write two separate words.

H Apostrophe (‘)

Look at these examples.

Today we’re going for a drive in the country. Everyone is looking at Nick’s car. We use an apostrophe (‘) in short forms, when there is a missing letter, e.g. **we’re** (=we are). *We also use an apostrophe with s to form the possessive of a noun, e.g. Nick’s car.*

I Capital letters

There are two capital letters (big letters) in this sentence.

The boss said I could leave early.

We use a capital letter at the beginning of a sentence and for the word I.

We also use a capital letter to begin the names of people, places, companies, etc.

*Mark and Sarah New Orleans the High Street Somerset
House General Motors*

This includes the names of books, films, magazines, etc. All the important words start with a capital letter.

*The Spy Loved Me Four Weddings and a Funeral
Newsweek*

We also use a capital letter for days of the week, month of the year, holidays and festivals, historical times, nationalities and most abbreviations.

*Monday, August Easter the New Year the Industrial revolution
some Italian wine the UN (=the United Nations)*

APPENDIX – 3

The Difference between British and American English -

Британия және Америка ағылшын тілдерінің айырмашылығы

<p>A Present Perfect and Past Simple</p> <p>The British use the Present Perfect for recent actions, and especially with just, already and yet.</p> <p><i>Bob has washed the dishes, look.</i></p> <p><i>We've already eaten our lunch.</i></p> <p><i>I've just seen Elaine.</i></p> <p><i>Have you corrected your work yet?</i></p> <p>The British normally use the Present Perfect with ever and never, not the Past Simple.</p> <p><i>Have you ever played cricket?</i></p> <p><i>The child has never seen snow before.</i></p> <p>Shall</p> <p>The British use will for the future, but they can also use shall in the first person.</p>	<p>American can use either the Present Perfect or the Past Simple in these sentences.</p> <p><i>Bob has washed the dishes, look.</i> <i>or Bob washed the dishes, look.</i> <i>We've already eaten our lunch.</i> <i>or We've already ate our lunch.</i> <i>I've just seen Elaine.</i> <i>or I just saw Elaine.</i></p> <p><i>Have you corrected your work yet?</i> <i>or Did you correct your work yet?</i></p> <p>Americans normally use the Past Simple with ever and never, but the Present Perfect is possible.</p> <p><i>Did you ever play baseball?</i> <i>Have you ever played cricket?</i> <i>The child never saw snow before.</i> <i>The child has never seen snow before.</i></p> <p>Americans do not normally use shall for the future.</p>
---	---

<p><i>I will / shall be here tomorrow.</i> <i>We will / We shall contact you.</i> The British use shall to make an offer. <i>Shall I make the coffee?</i> The British can use Shall we...? For a suggestion. <i>Shall we go for a walk?</i></p>	<p><i>I will be here tomorrow.</i> <i>We will contact you.</i> Americans normally use should. <i>Should I make the coffee?</i> Americans do not normally use shall in suggestions. <i>How about a walk?</i> <i>Would you like to take a walk?</i></p>
<p>B The British do not use gotten. <i>He's made a lot of money from his business activities.</i> <i>Your driving has got better.</i></p>	<p>In the US, have gotten expression an action. <i>He's gotten / made a lot of money from his business activities.</i> Americans also use gotten meaning 'become'. <i>Your driving has gotten better.</i></p>
<p>C "The" The British use 'the' with a musical instrument. <i>I can play the piano.</i> The British say in hospital. <i>My sister is still in hospital.</i></p>	<p>Americans can leave out the. <i>I can play piano / play the piano.</i> Americans say in the hospital. <i>My sister is still in the hospital.</i></p>
<p>D Numbers The British use and between hundred and the rest of the number. <i>Six hundred and twenty</i></p>	<p>Americans can leave out and. <i>Six hundred twenty or six hundred and twenty.</i></p>
<p>E Dates BRITISH <i>23 June</i> '<i>the twenty-third of June</i>' '<i>June the twenty-third</i>' The British write 23.6.2012</p>	<p>AMERICAN June 23 "<i>June twenty-third</i>" Americans write 6.23.2012</p>
<p>F Prepositions <i>in Bond Street</i> <i>at the weekend, at weekends</i> <i>stay at home</i></p>	<p><i>on Fifth Avenue</i> <i>on the weekend, on weekends</i> <i>stay home</i></p>

<i>a player in the team</i> <i>ten minutes past four</i> <i>twenty to seven</i> <i>write to me</i> <i>talk to someone</i> <i>meet someone</i>	<i>a player on the team</i> <i>ten minutes past / after four</i> <i>twenty to / of seven</i> <i>write me / write to me</i> <i>talk to / with someone</i> <i>meet with someone</i>
--	--

IRREGULAR VERBS – БҰРЫС ЕТІСТІКТЕР

Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Participle II	Participle I	Аудармасы
arise	arose	arisen	arising	пайда болу, шығу
aware	awoke	awoke	awaring	ояту, ояну
be	was, were	been	being	болу
bear	bore	borne / born	boring	туу, туылу
beat	beat	beaten / beat	beating	ұру, соғу
become	became	become	becoming	болу
begin	began	begun	beginning	бастау
bend	bent	bent	bending	майыстыру
bind	bound	bound	binding	байлау
bite	bit	bitten	biting	тістеу
bleed	bled	bled	bleeding	қансырау
blow	blew	blown	blowing	үрлеу
break	broke	broken	breaking	сындыру
breed	bred	bred	breeding	шығару
bring	brought	brought	bringing	әкелу
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	broadcastin g	радио арқылы хабарлау
build	built	built	building	салу
burn	burned / burnt	burned burnt	burning	жағу, жану
burst	burst	burst	bursting	жарылу
buy	bought	bought	buying	сату
cast	cast	cast	casting	лақтыру
catch	caught	caught	catching	аулау, ұстау
choose	chose	chosen	choosing	таңдау
cling	clung	clung	clinging	жабысып қалу
come	came	come	coming	келу
cost	cost	cost	costing	тұру баға
creep	crept	crept	creeping	жорғалау
cut	cut	cut	cutting	кесу
deal	dealt	dealt	dealing	сату
dig	dug	dug	digging	қазу
do	did	done	doing	жасау
draw	drew	drawn	drawing	сурет салу

dream	dreamed / dreamt	dreamed / dreamt	dreaming	түс көру, армандау
drink	drank	drunk	drinking	ішу
drive	drove	driven	driving	жүргізу
dwell	dwelt	dwelt	dwelling	тұру, тоқталу
eat	ate	eaten	eating	жеу
fall	fell	fallen	falling	күлау
feed	fed	fed	feeding	тамақ беру
feel	felt	felt	feeling	сезу
fight	fought	fought	fighting	күресу табу
find	found	found	finding	табу
fit	fit / fitted	fit / fitted	fitting	үйлесу
flee	fled	fled	fleeing	қашу, тасалау
fling	flung	flung	fling	лақтыру
fly	flew	flown	flying	ұшу
forbid	forbade	forbidden	forbidding	тиым салу
forget	forgot	forgotten	forgetting	ұмыту
forgive	forgave	forgiven	forgiving	кешіру
freeze	froze	frozen	freezing	тоңазыту
get	got	gotten / got	getting	алу
give	gave	given	giving	беру
go	went	gone	going	бару
grind	ground	ground	grinding	уату
grow	grew	grown	growing	өсу
hang	hung	hung	hanging	асу, ілу
have	had	had	having	ие болу, бар болу
hear	heard	heard	hearing	есту
hide	hid	hidden	hiding	тығу
hit	hit	hit	hitting	ұру, соғу
hold	held	held	holding	ұстау
hurt	hurt	hurt	hurting	жаралау
keep	kept	kept	keeping	сақтау
kneel	kneeled / knelt	kneeled / knelt	kneeling	тізерлеу
know	knew	known	knowing	білу
lay	laid	laid	laying	жаю
lead	led	led	leading	басқару
lean	leaned / learnt	leaned / learnt	leaning	сүйену

leap	leaped / leapt	leaped / leapt	leaping	секіру
learn	learned / learnt	learned / learnt	learning	үйрену
leave	left	left	leaving	қалдыру
lend	lent	lent	lending	қарыз беру
let	let	let	letting	рұқсат беру
lie	lay	lain	lying	жату
light	lighted / lit	lighted / lit	lighting	жарық беру
lose	lost	lost	losing	жоғалту
make	made	made	making	жасау
mean	meant	meant	meaning	мағына білдіру
meet	met	met	meeting	кездесу
mislaid	mislaid	mislaid	misleading	тастау
mistake	mistook	mistaken	mistaking	қателесу
pay	paid	paid	paying	төлеу
put	put	put	putting	қою
quit	quit	quit	quitting	кету, қалдыру
read	read	read	reading	оқу
ride	rode	ridden	riding	атпен немесе көлікпен жүру
ring	rang	rung	ringing	шылдырлау
rise	rose	risen	rising	көтерілу
run	run	run	running	жүгіру
say	said	said	saying	айту
saw	sawed	sawn	sawing	арамен кесу
see	saw	seen	seeing	көру
seek	sought	sought	seeking	іздеу
sell	sold	sold	selling	сату
send	sent	sent	sending	жіберу
set	set	set	setting	орнату
shake	shook	shaken	shaking	сілкіу
shave	shaved	shaven	shaving	қырыну
shed	shed	shed	shedding	төгу (қан, көз жасын)
shine	shone	shone	shining	жылтырау
shoot	shot	shot	shooting	ату
show	showed	shown	showing	көрсету
shrink	shrank	shrunk	shrinking	тыржиту, қысқарту

shut	shut	shut	shutting	жабу
sing	sang	sung	singing	ән айту
sink	sank	sunk	sinking	бату
sit	sat	sat	sitting	отыру
sleep	slept	slept	sleeping	ұйықтау
slide	slid	slid	sliding	сырғу
smell	smelled / smelt	smelled/smelt	smelling	иіскеу, иіс шығару
sow	sowed	sown	sowing	егу
speak	spoke	spoken	speaking	сөйлеу
speed	sped / speeded	sped / speeded	speeding	асығу
spell	spent	spent	spending	әріптеп айту
spend	spent	spent	spending	өткізу
spill	spilled / spilt	spilled / spilt	spilling	төгу
spin	span	spun	spinning	иіру
split	split	split	splitting	жару
spoil	spoiled / spoilt	spoiled / spoilt	spoiling	бұзылу
spread	spread	spread	spreading	тарау
spring	sprang / sprung	sprung	springing	секіру
stand	stood	stood	standing	тұру
steal	stole	stolen	stealing	ұрлау
stick	stuck	stuck	sticking	жабыстыру
sting	stung	stung	stinging	шағу
strike	struck	struck	striking	соғу
strive	strove	striven	striving	тырысу
swear	swore	sworn	swearing	ұрсу, ант ету
sweep	swept	swept	sweeping	сыпыру
swell	swelled	swollen	swelling	ісіну
swim	swam	swum	swimming	жүзу
swing	swung	swung	swinging	шайқау
take	took	taken	taking	алу
teach	taught	taught	teaching	оқыту
tear	tore	torn	tearing	жұлу
tell	told	told	telling	айту
think	thought	thought	thinking	ойлау
throw	threw	thrown	throwing	лақтыру
tread	trod	trodden	treading	жүру, аяқ басу

understand	understood	understood	understanding	түсіну
wake	woke / waked	woken / waked	waking	ояну
wear	wore	worn	wearing	кию
weep	wept	wept	weeping	жылау
win	won	won	winning	жеңу, ұту
wind	wound	wound	winding	бұрау, өрлеу
write	wrote	written	writing	жазу

ҚОЛДАНЫЛҒАН ӘДЕБИЕТТЕР:

1. Баданбекқызы З.Р. English grammar in tables. Almaty 1998
2. Бонк Н.А., Котий Г.А. Бонк Н.А., Котий Г.А. АҒЫЛШЫН тілінің оқулығы. 1 бөлім
3. Васильев В.А. және басқалар. АҒЫЛШЫН тілінің фонетикасы. Ленинград, 1980.
4. Голицинский Ю.Б. Грамматика. Жаттығулар жиниғы. Санкт-Петербург.
5. Исаева М.К. Исева М.К. АҒЫЛШЫН тілінің фонетикасы. Алматы., 2007
6. Качалова К.Н. АҒЫЛШЫН тілінің граматикасы. «Внешторгиздат», 1964.
7. Кеңесбаева Ү.А.. АҒЫЛШЫН халқының мақал-мәтелдері. Алматы 2004
8. ШЫҢ КІТАП. АҒЫЛШЫН тілі. тест жинақтары. Алматы 2009.
9. Ahmetova S.G., Tursunbaeva English-Kazarh dictionary. Almaty 2004.
10. Broukal Milada. TOEFUL Test Assistant Мәскеу, Астрель * Аст 2004
11. Dubrovin I.M. Situational Grammar. / P. II. M., 1974.
12. Grammar Express. For Self-study and Classroom Use. Longman, 2000.
13. English Grammar in Use / Cambridge
14. Oxford Practice Grammar. Oxford University Press 2009
15. Thomson A.J., Martinet A.V. A Practical English Grammar. Oxford University Press.
16. Shershneva T.Y. Digest of Theoretical English Grammar. Almay 2001.

МАЗМҰНЫ:

UNIT I	3
THE NOUN – ЗАТ ЕСІМ	3
Зат есімнің түрлері	3
Зат есімнің классификациясы.....	4
Зат есімдердің көпше түрінің жасалуы	4
The Case Зат есімнің тәуелдік жалғаулары	7
Exercises	9
The article – артикль.....	11
The zero article артикльдердің қолданылмайтын кездері	14
Exercises	16
Testyourself	20
UNIT II	24
THE PRONOUN – ЕСІМДІК	24
Personal pronouns	24
Possessive pronouns. Тәуелдік есімдіктері	25
Demonstrative pronouns. Сілтеу есімдіктері	25
Interrogative pronouns Сұрау есімдіктері	26
Self-pronouns (Reflexive pronouns) Өздік есімдіктері	26
Many және Much есімдіктері	28
All және Both есімдіктері	29
Either және Neither есімдіктері	30
Each (әрқайсысы) және Every (әрбір) есімдіктері	31
Exercises	32
Testyourself.....	36
UNIT III	40
THE ADJECTIVE - СЫН ЕСІМ	40
Сын есімнің түрлері	40
The degree of comparison Сын есімнің шырайлары	40
Сын есімдердің шырайларының жасалу жолдары.....	41
THE ADVERB – ҮСТЕУ	42
The degree of comparison Үстеулердің шырайлары	43
Exercises.....	44
Testyourself.....	47
UNIT IV	50
THE NUMERAL - САН ЕСІМ	50
1.1. Есептік сан есімдер	50
1.2 Реттік сан есімдер.....	50

1.3 Ағылшын тіліндегі даталар	51
1.4 Fractional numbers – Бөлшектік сан есімдер.....	51
1.5 Telling the time	51
1.6 Money	52
1.7 Telephone numbers	52
Exercises.....	53
Testyourself.....	54
UNIT V	58
THE VERB – ETICTIK.....	58
THE PRESENT SIMPLE (INDEFINITE) TENSE	59
THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE (CONTINUOUS) TENSE.....	62
THE PAST SIMPLE (INDEFINITE) TENSE	65
THE PAST PROGRESSIVE (CONTINUOUS) TENSE	66
Exercises....	67
Testyourself.....	70
UNIT VI	75
THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE	75
THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS	77
THE PAST PERFECT	79
THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS	80
Exercises.....	81
Testyourself.....	85
UNIT VII	89
THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE	89
FUTURE CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE	91
THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE	92
FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE	93
FUTURE IN THE PAST	94
Exercises....	96
Testyourself.....	99
UNIT VIII	103
MODAL VERBS	103
CAN (COULD)	104
MAY (MIGHT)	105
MUST	106
HAVE TO модальді етістігі	107
SHOULD, OUGHT TO, HAD BETTER модальді етістігі	108
Exercises....	109
Testyourself.....	112

UNIT IX	116
VOICE - ETIC	116
Exercises.....	119
Testyourself.....	121
UNIT X	125
DIRECT AND INDIRECT ‘REPORTED’ SPEECH Төл сөз бен төлеу сөз	125
Reported questions	126
Changing Imperative sentences and Interrogative sentence from Direct into Indirect Speech Бұйрықты сөйлем және сұраулы сөйлемде төл сөздің төл сөзге өзгеруі.....	127
Төл сөздің төлеу сөзге айналуында сілтеу есімдіктерінің шағы мен орнының өзгеру ережесі.	128
Exercises.....	129
Testyourself.....	131
UNIT XI	135
NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERBS Жақсыз етістіктер.....	135
THE GERUND – ГЕРУНДИЙ	136
Exercises....	141
Testyourself.....	144
PARTICIPLE – ЕСІМШЕ (-ING AND –ED FORMS).....	148
Есімшенің қолданылуы	148
Жаттығулар	153
Testyourself.....	154
INFINITIVE – ИНФИНИТИВ	157
The Objective Infinitive construction Complex object	162
Exercises	164
Testyourself.....	166
UNIT XII	169
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES – ШАРТТЫ СӨЙЛЕМДЕР.....	169
First conditional	169
Second conditional.....	169
Third Conditional (unreal past situations)	170
Mixed Conditional Аралас шартты сөйлем	170
Exercises....	172
Testyourself.....	174
UNIT XIII	176
CONSTRUCTIONS – КОНСТРУКЦИЯЛАР	176
Exercises	178

Testyourself.....	180
UNIT IVX	183
THE SYNTAX – СИНТАКСИС	183
General questions (Yes/No questions) – Жалпы сұрақ.....	183
Special questions (WH – questions) – Арнайы сұрақ	184
Disjunctive Questions (Tag questions)- Анықтаушы сұрақ	185
Alternative question – Балама сұрақ	186
Imperative sentences - Бұйрықты сөйлем	186
UNIT XV	187
WORD ORDER – СӨЗ ТӘРТІБІ	187
Жай сөйлемнің сөз тәртібі	187
Exercises	191
Testyourself.....	193
UNIT XVI	196
WORD BUILDING – СӨЗ ЖАСАМ.....	196
Қарама-қарсы мағына беретін префикстер	198
Exercises.....	201
Testyourself	202
UNIT XVII	205
PREPOSITIONS – ДЕМЕУЛІКТЕР.....	205
Әртүрлі демеуліктермен қолданылатын тұрақты сөз тіркес.....	208
Exercises.....	212
Testyourself	214
UNIT XVIII	217
THE LEXICOLOGY – ЛЕКСИКА	217
Фразалық етістіктер.....	217
Жиі қолданылатын фразалық етістіктер	217
Proverbs – Мақал мәтелдер	218
Exercises	220
Testyourself	222
UNIT XIX	226
SPELLING PROBLEMS – ОРФОГРАФИЯ.....	226
Exercises.....	228
Testyourself	229
APPENDIX – I	231
APPENDIX – II PUNCTUATION – ПУНКТУАЦИЯ	237
APPENDIX – III	240

The Difference between British and American English-Британия және Америка ағылшын тілдерінің айырмашылығы	243
VERBS – БҰРЫС ЕТІСТІКТЕР	243
ҚОЛДАНЫЛҒАН ӘДЕБИЕТТЕР	248

*Көлемі 15,8 б.т. Таралымы 500 дана. Офсет қағазы.
Тапсырыс № 115*

*М. Өтемісов атындағы Батыс Қазақстан мемлекеттік университетінің
редакциялық баспа орталығы.
Орал қаласы, Достық даңғылы, 162.*